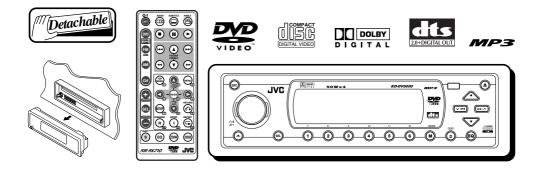




DVD/CD RECEIVER





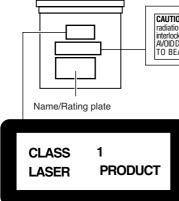
This unit is equipped with the display demonstration. To cancel it, see page 9.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.



Position And Reproduction Of Labels

Bottom panel of the main unit



Caution:

This product contains a laser component of higher laser class than Class 1.

			VADO. Austrassa is
/OID DIRECT EXPOSURE	af funktion. Undgåudsæt-	urkopplad. Betrakta ej	mälle lasersäteilylle.
O BEAM. (e)	telse for stråling. (d)	strålen. (s)	Älä katso säteeseen. (f)
	diation when open and erlock failed or defeated. /OID DIRECT EXPOSURE	diation when open and stråling ved åbning, når erlock failedor defeated. sikkerhedsafbrydere er ude /OID DIRECT EXPOSURE af funktion. Undgåudsæt-	AUTION: Invisible laser ADVARSEL: Usynlig Laser- VARNING: Osynlig laser- diation when open and erfock failedor defeated. Istrålning ved äbning, når Istrålning när denna del är offloor defeated. Isikkerhedsafbrydære er ude ODIDDIRECTEXPOSURE af funktion. Undgåudsæt- urkoplad. Betrakta ej D BEAM. (e)

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

Precautions:

- 1.CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
- 2. CAUTION: Invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
- 3. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user-serviceable parts inside. Leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
- 4. CAUTION: This DVD/CD player uses invisible laser radiation and is equipped with safety switches to prevent radiation emission when unloading CDs. It is dangerous to defeat the safety switches.
- 5. **CAUTION:** Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

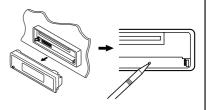
How to reset your unit

After detaching the control panel, press the reset button on the panel holder using a ball-point pen or similar tool. This will reset the built-in microcomputer.

NOTE:

If you reset the unit during play, the playback mode selections (e.g. repeat play mode setting), you have selected for the current disc will be reset to the initial settings.

• During DVD playback, the disc menu selection will also be reset to the initial disc settings.



Thank you for purchasing a JVC product. Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.

- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

CAUTION: DO NOT insert a disc while the disc loading lamp is flashing or is not lit. (See page 18.)

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing use only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

CAUTION on Volume Setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. If the volume level is adjusted for the tuner, for example, the speakers may be damaged by the sudden increase in the output level. Therefore, lower the volume before playing a disc and adjust it as required during playback.

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. [ICOW TEMP.] indicator appears on the display.

When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

BEFORE USE

- * For safety
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.
- * Temperature inside the car....

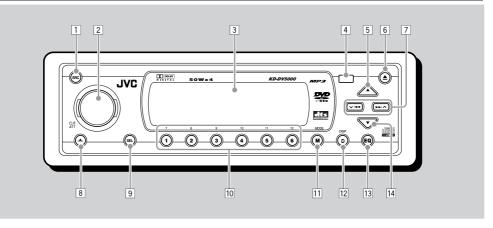
If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

Control panel5Remote controller6Preparing the remote controller7BASIC OPERATIONS8Turning on the power8Canceling the display demonstration9Setting the clock9Activating the level meter10RADIO OPERATIONS11Listening to the radio11Storing stations in memory13Tuning in to a preset station14Changing the display pattern15PLAYABLE DISCS16BASIC DISC PLAYBACK18Starting playback18Locating a particular title/chapter/track20Locating a particular folder21DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS22Selecting subtitles23Selecting nulti-angle views23Menu operations24Zoom in25ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS26Searching for a particular point26Playing in various play modes30USD DISC OPERATIONS32Operations on the monitor screen32OTHER DISC OPERATIONS32Operations on the monitor screen32OTHER DISC OPERATIONS35Basic disc playback35Locating a folder/track to play36Selecting a title/chapter/track on a disc36Selecting a title/chapter/track to play38	How to reset your unit	2
Remote controller 6 Preparing the remote controller 7 BASIC OPERATIONS 8 Turning on the power 8 Canceling the display demonstration 9 Setting the clock 9 Activating the level meter 10 RADIO OPERATIONS 11 Listening to the radio 11 Storing stations in memory 13 Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting nulti-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Playing in various play modes 30 Listening with headphones 30 DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32	LOCATION OF THE BUTTONS	5
Preparing the remote controller 7 BASIC OPERATIONS 8 Turning on the power 8 Canceling the display demonstration 9 Setting the clock 9 Activating the level meter 10 RADIO OPERATIONS 11 Listening to the radio 11 Storing stations in memory 13 Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Playing in various play modes 30 Listening with headphones 30 DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 32		5
BASIC OPERATIONS 8 Turning on the power 8 Canceling the display demonstration 9 Setting the clock 9 Activating the level meter 10 RADIO OPERATIONS 11 Listening to the radio 11 Storing stations in memory 13 Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting nulti-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 Operations on the monitor screen<		
Turning on the power 8 Canceling the display demonstration 9 Setting the clock 9 Activating the level meter 10 RADIO OPERATIONS 11 Listening to the radio 11 Storing stations in memory 13 Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 Listening with headphones 30 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DIS	Preparing the remote controller	7
Canceling the display demonstration9Setting the clock9Activating the level meter10 RADIO OPERATIONS 11Listening to the radio11Storing stations in memory13Tuning in to a preset station14Changing the display pattern15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18Starting playback18Locating a particular title/chapter/track20Locating a particular folder21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22Selecting subtitles22Selecting nulti-angle views23Menu operations24Zoom in25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26Searching for a particular point26Playing in various play modes30 USD DISC OPERATIONS 32Operations on the monitor screen32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 32Operations on the monitor screen32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35Basic disc playback35Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc36Selecting a folder/track to play37Selecting playback modes38	BASIC OPERATIONS	8
Setting the clock 9 Activating the level meter 10 RADIO OPERATIONS 11 Listening to the radio 11 Storing stations in memory 13 Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Selecting multi-angle views 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 Operations on the monitor screen 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title		
Activating the level meter 10 RADIO OPERATIONS 11 Listening to the radio 11 Storing stations in memory 13 Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 Operations on the monitor screen 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Sele		
RADIO OPERATIONS 11 Listening to the radio 11 Storing stations in memory 13 Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Selecting multi-angle views 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 Listening with headphones 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37		
Listening to the radio 11 Storing stations in memory 13 Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting audio languages 23 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	•	10
Storing stations in memory 13 Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting nulti-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 Operations on the monitor screen 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	RADIO OPERATIONS	11
Tuning in to a preset station 14 Changing the display pattern 15 PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting nulti-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Playing for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38		
Changing the display pattern15PLAYABLE DISCS16BASIC DISC PLAYBACK18Starting playback18Locating a particular title/chapter/track20Locating a particular title/chapter/track20Locating a particular folder21DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS22Selecting subtitles22Selecting audio languages23Selecting multi-angle views23Menu operations24Zoom in25ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS26Searching for a particular point26Playing in various play modes28DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS30Listening with headphones30OSD DISC OPERATIONS32Operations on the monitor screen32OTHER DISC OPERATIONS35Basic disc playback35Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc36Selecting a folder/track to play37Selecting playback modes38		
PLAYABLE DISCS 16 BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting audio languages 23 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 Operations on the monitor screen 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38		
BASIC DISC PLAYBACK 18 Starting playback 18 Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting nulti-angle views 23 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	Changing the display pattern	15
Starting playback18Locating a particular title/chapter/track20Locating a particular folder21DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS22Selecting subtitles22Selecting audio languages23Selecting multi-angle views23Menu operations24Zoom in25ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS26Searching for a particular point26Playing in various play modes28DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS30Listening with headphones30OSD DISC OPERATIONS32Operations on the monitor screen32OTHER DISC OPERATIONS35Basic disc playback35Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc36Selecting a folder/track to play37Selecting playback modes38	PLAYABLE DISCS	16
Starting playback18Locating a particular title/chapter/track20Locating a particular folder21DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS22Selecting subtitles22Selecting audio languages23Selecting multi-angle views23Menu operations24Zoom in25ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS26Searching for a particular point26Playing in various play modes28DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS30Listening with headphones30OSD DISC OPERATIONS32Operations on the monitor screen32OTHER DISC OPERATIONS35Basic disc playback35Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc36Selecting a folder/track to play37Selecting playback modes38	BASIC DISC PLAYBACK	18
Locating a particular title/chapter/track 20 Locating a particular folder 21 DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting audio languages 23 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 selecting playback modes 38		18
DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS 22 Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting audio languages 23 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Playing for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 selecting playback modes 38		20
Selecting subtitles 22 Selecting audio languages 23 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 selecting playback modes 38	Locating a particular folder	21
Selecting audio languages 23 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38		
Selecting audio languages 23 Selecting multi-angle views 23 Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS	22
Menu operations 24 Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 selecting playback modes 38		
Zoom in 25 ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS 26 Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	Selecting subtitles Selecting audio languages	22
ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS26Searching for a particular point26Playing in various play modes28DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS30Listening with headphones30OSD DISC OPERATIONS32Operations on the monitor screen32OTHER DISC OPERATIONS35Basic disc playback35Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc36Selecting a folder/track to play37Selecting playback modes38	Selecting subtitles Selecting audio languages Selecting multi-angle views	22 23 23
Searching for a particular point 26 Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	Selecting subtitles Selecting audio languages Selecting multi-angle views Menu operations	22 23 23 23 24
Playing in various play modes 28 DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	Selecting subtitles Selecting audio languages Selecting multi-angle views Menu operations	22 23 23 23 24
DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS 30 Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	Selecting subtitles Selecting audio languages Selecting multi-angle views Menu operations Zoom in ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS	22 23 23 24 25
Listening with headphones 30 OSD DISC OPERATIONS 32 Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26
OSD DISC OPERATIONS32Operations on the monitor screen32OTHER DISC OPERATIONS35Basic disc playback35Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc36Selecting a folder/track to play37Selecting playback modes38	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 26
Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 26 28
Operations on the monitor screen 32 OTHER DISC OPERATIONS 35 Basic disc playback 35 Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play 37 Selecting playback modes 38	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 26 28 30
OTHER DISC OPERATIONS35Basic disc playback35Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc36Selecting a folder/track to play37using the lists37Selecting playback modes38	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 26 28 30 30
Basic disc playback35Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc36Selecting a folder/track to play37using the lists37Selecting playback modes38	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 26 28 30 30 30 32
Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc 36 Selecting a folder/track to play using the lists	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 28 30 30 32 32
Selecting a folder/track to play using the lists	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 26 28 30 30 30 32 32 35
Selecting playback modes 38	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 28 30 30 30 30 32 32 35 35
	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 28 30 30 30 32 32 35 35 36
Prohibiting disc ejection 41	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 26 28 30 30 30 30 32 35 35 36 37
Changing the display pattern	Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 26 28 30 30 30 30 32 35 35 36 37

DVD SETUP MENU Basic setting procedure	43 43
SOUND ADJUSTMENTS Adjusting the sound Selecting preset sound modes	47 47
(iEQ: intelligent equalizer) Storing your own sound adjustments	48 49
OTHER MAIN FUNCTIONS Changing the general settings (PSM) Selecting the dimmer mode Changing the display color Assigning names to the sources Detaching the control panel	50 54 55 57 58
CD CHANGER OPERATIONS Playing discs Selecting the playback modes	59 59 63
EXTERNAL COMPONENT OPERATIONS Playing an external component	65 65
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	66
LANGUAGE CODES	67
GLOSSARY	68
TROUBLESHOOTING	69
MAINTENANCE	72 72
SPECIFICATIONS	73

Control panel



Refer to the pages in parentheses for details.

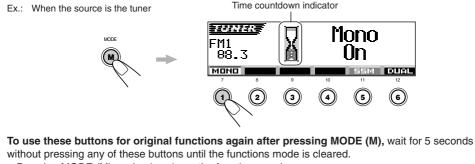
- 1 SRC (source) button (8, 57, 59, 65)
- ・ ひ/I ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button (8)
 - Control dial
- 3 Display window
- 4 Remote sensor
- 5 ▲ (up) button
 - Functions as the Play button for DVDs and VCDs.

- 6 ▲ (eject) button (20, 35)
- 7 ✓ I◄◄/►►I ▲ buttons
- 8 (control panel release) button (58)
- 9 SEL (select) button
- 10 Number buttons
- 11 MODE (M) button
- 12 DISP (D) (display) button (10, 15, 41, 60, 65)
- 13 EQ (equalizer) button (10, 48)
- 14 ▼ (down) button
 - Functions as the Stop button for DVDs and VCDs.

How to use the MODE (M) button

If you press MODE (M), the unit goes into functions mode. While in functions mode, the number buttons work as different function buttons.

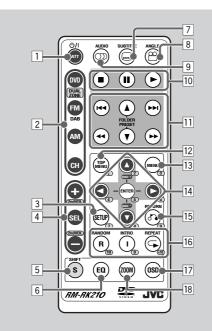
The ▲/▼ buttons also work as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE (M).



• Pressing MODE (M) again also clears the functions mode.



Remote controller



IMPORTANT:

If "Dual Zone" is turned on (see page 30), the remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.

Refer to the pages in parentheses for details.

- 1 **ウ/I** ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button
- 2 Source selection button
 - DVD, FM, AM, and CH
 - DVD button also functions as the DUAL ZONE button while pressed with SHIFT (S) button. (30)
 - FM button also functions to change the FM bands. Each time you press the button, FM band changes to FM1, FM2, and FM3 in sequence.
 - FM button does not function as the DAB button for this model.
 - CH button does not function if no CD changer is connected.

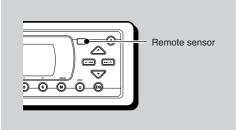
- 3*SETUP button (43)
- Basic sound setting buttons SEL, +, and –
 - The +/- buttons normally function as the volume adjustment buttons.
 - The +/- buttons also function as the 2ndVOL +/- buttons when pressed with SHIFT (S) button. (31)
- 5 SHIFT (S) button
- 6 EQ (equalizer) button (48)
 - This button does not work for selecting the level meter.
- 7 SUBTITLE 😡 button (22)
- 🔋 ANGLE 🋱 button (23)
- 9 AUDIO D button (23)
- 10 Disc basic operation buttons (20)
 - (stop), II (pause), ► (play)
- 11 Disc advanced operation buttons I ◄◄ / ►►I (reverse search/forward search)
 - The I / >> buttons also work for searching for stations.
 - (reverse/fast forward)
 - These buttons do not work for CD changer operations.
 - FOLDER PRESET ▲ / ▼
 - The FOLDER PRESET ▲ / ▼ buttons also work for selecting the preset stations.
- 12*TOP MENU button (24)
- 13*MENU button (24)
- 14*Menu operation buttons
 - Cursor (\blacktriangle / \blacktriangledown / \blacklozenge), and ENTER
- 15*RETURN 🖧 button (24)
- 16* Play mode buttons (28, 29, 63, 64) RANDOM (R), INTRO (I), and REPEAT (♀)
- 17 OSD button (32)
- 18 ZOOM button (25)
- * These buttons function as the number buttons when pressed with SHIFT (S) button.



Preparing the remote controller

Before using the remote controller:

• Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the main unit. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.



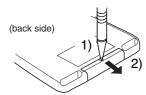
• Do not expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Installing the battery

When the controllable range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the battery.

1. Remove the battery holder.

- 1) Push out the battery holder in the direction indicated by the arrow using a ball-point pen or a similar tool.
- 2) Remove the battery holder.



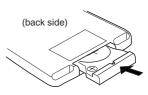
2. Place the battery.

Slide the battery into the holder with the + side facing upwards so that the battery is fixed in the holder.



 Lithium coin battery (product number: CR2025) 3. Return the battery holder.

Insert again the battery holder pushing it until you hear a clicking sound.



WARNING:

• Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.

If a child accidentally swallows the battery, consult a doctor immediately.

- Do not recharge, short, disassemble or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire. Doing any of these things may cause the battery to give off heat, crack or start a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.

Doing this may cause the battery to give off heat, crack or start a fire.

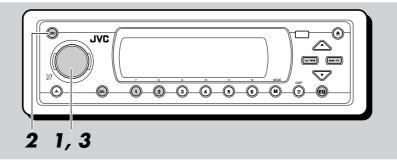
- When throwing away or saving the battery, wrap it in tape and insulate; otherwise, the battery may start to give off heat, crack or start a fire.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.

Doing this may cause the battery to give off heat, crack or start a fire.

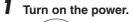
CAUTION:

DO NOT leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time. Otherwise, it may be damaged.





Turning on the power





Note on One-Touch Operation:

When you select a source in step **2** below, the power automatically comes on. You do not have to press this button to turn on the power.

2 Select the source.

Each time you press the button, the source changes as follows.

→ TUNER → DISC → CD-CH or LINE IN -(CD changer)

- To operate the tuner (FM or AM), see pages 11 15.
- To play a disc,
 - see pages 16 46.
- To operate the CD changer,

see pages 59 – 64.

- To operate the external component (LINE IN), see page 65.
- *1 If a disc is not in the loading slot, you cannot select "DISC" as the source to play.
- *2 Without connecting a CD changer, you cannot select it as the source to play.
- *³ To select "LINE IN," select "Line In" for the "Ext Input" setting on page 53.

3 Adjust the volume.

Current sound (iEQ) mode (see page 48)

4 Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 47 – 49.)

Note:

While playing a source, you can also show the level meter on the display. For details, see "Activating the level meter" on page 10.

To drop the volume in a moment

Press **O**/I ATT briefly while listening to any source. "ATT" starts flashing on the display, and the volume level will drop in a moment. To resume the previous volume level, press the button briefly again.

• If you turn the control dial, you can also restore the sound.

To turn off the power

Press **U**/I ATT for more than 1 second.

• If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, playback will start from where playback has been stopped previously, next time you turn on the power.



Canceling the display demonstration

When shipped from the factory, display demonstration has been activated, and starts automatically when no operations are done for about 20 seconds.

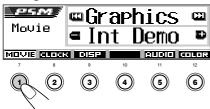
• It is recommended to cancel the demonstration before you use the unit for the first time.

To cancel the display demonstration, follow the procedure below:

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: see page 51.)



Press number button 1 to select "MOVIE"—Movie category of the PSM settings.



The "Graphics" setting screen appears on the display.

3 Select "Off."



4 Finish the setting.

To activate the display demonstration, repeat the same procedure and select "All Demo" or "Int Demo" in step **3**.

• For more details, see "To set the movie demonstration—Graphics" on page 52.

Setting the clock

You can also set the clock system to 24 hours or 12 hours.

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: see page 51.)



2 Press number button 2 to select "CLOCK"—Clock category of the PSM settings.



The "Clock Hr" setting screen appears on the display.

3 Adjust the hour.



Set the minute.

- 1 Select "Clock Min (minute)."
- 2 Adjust the minute.



CONTINUED ON THE NEXT PAGE



Set the clock system.

- 1 Select "24H/12H."
 - 2 Adjust "24Hours" or "12Hours."

2







To check the current clock time when the unit is turned off. press DISP (D).

The power turns on and the clock time is shown for about 5 seconds, then the power turns off.

Activating the level meter

You can show the level meters on the display while playing any source. This unit is equipped with three level meter patterns.

 There is a time limit in doing the following procedure. If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 1 again.

Press EQ (equalizer) twice.

Last selected level meter appears on the display.

· If you press the button only once, the sound selection screen appears (see page 48).

Select the level meter pattern you want.

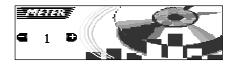


As you turn the control dial. the level meters change as follows:

> Off → 1 ► 3 ↔ 2 ↔

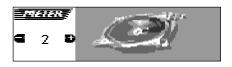
Meter 1:

The audio level meter fluctuates vertically.



Meter 2:

The speaker on the display vibrates as input audio level changes.



Meter 3:

The left and right audio level meters appear.

 If the display pattern is changed, only one audio level meter will be shown.



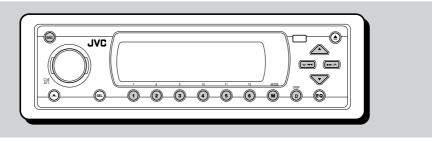
Off:

No level meter is shown. The source animation appears.

NOTICE:

The illustrations of the display used in this manual are mainly of the initial setting when shipped from the factory. If you have changed the display patterns or some PSM items, the actual displays you see will be different.

RADIO OPERATIONS



The operations of this section are mainly explained using the buttons on the control panel. When the remote controller can be used for the same operations, it is then explained.

Listening to the radio

You can use either automatic searching or manual searching to tune in to a particular station.

<u>Searching for a station automatically:</u> <u>Auto search</u>

This operation is also possible from the remote controller.

Select the band (FM1 – 3, AM).



- Press SRC (source)
 repeatedly to select the tuner.
 Press and hold SPC
- Press and hold SRC.
 Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

→ FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM·

Selected band appears.

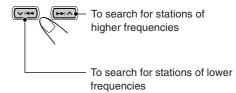


Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

Note:

This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

2 Start searching for a station.



When a station comes in, searching stops.

To stop searching before a station is received,

press the same button you have pressed for searching.

When using the remote controller

- 1 Press FM or AM.
 - When selecting the FM bands, press FM repeatedly until the band you want is selected.
- 2 Press ►►I or I to start searching.



, FMLAM





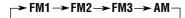
<u>Searching for a station manually:</u> <u>Manual search</u>

Select the band (FM1 – 3, AM).



1 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.

 Press and hold SRC.
 Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.



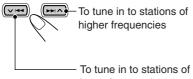
Note:

This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

2 Press and hold ►► A or ▼ Idd until "Manual Search" starts flashing on the display.



3 Tune in to a station you want while "Manual Search" is flashing.



lower frequencies

- If you release your finger from the button, the manual mode automatically turns off after 5 seconds.
- If you hold down the button, the frequency keeps changing (in 50 kHz intervals for FM and 9 kHz for AM) until you release the button.

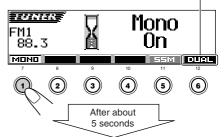
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive:

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode while listening to an FM stereo broadcast. "Mode" appears on the display.



 Press number button 1 to select "Mono On" while "Mode" is still on the display.
 Each time you press the button, "Mono On" and "Mono Off" appears alternately.

See page 30 for this function.



The display returns to the source indication screen.



When "Mono On" is selected, the MONO indicator appears, and the sound you hear becomes monaural but the reception will be improved.



Storing stations in memory

You can use one of the following two methods to store broadcasting stations in memory.

- Automatic preset of FM stations: SSM (Strongstation Sequential Memory)
- Manual preset of both FM and AM stations

FM station automatic preset: SSM

You can preset 6 local FM stations in each FM band (FM1, FM2, and FM3).

Select the FM band (FM1 – 3) you want to store FM stations into.



 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.

 Press and hold SRC.
 Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

≻FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM-

Note:

This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

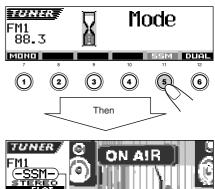
2 Start automatic preset.

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode.

"MODE "Mode" appears on the display.



Press and hold number button 5 while "Mode" is still on the display.



"-SSM-" appears, then disappears when automatic preset is over.

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the band number you have selected (FM1, FM2, or FM3). These stations are preset in the number buttons —No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.6 (highest frequency).

Manual preset

You can preset up to 6 stations in each band (FM1, FM2, FM3, and AM) manually.

- Ex.: Storing an FM station of 92.5 MHz into the preset number 1 of the FM1 band.
- Select the band (FM1 3, AM) you want to store stations into (in this example, FM1).



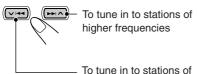
1 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.

 Press and hold SRC.
 Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

 \rightarrow FM1 \rightarrow FM2 \rightarrow FM3 \rightarrow AM-



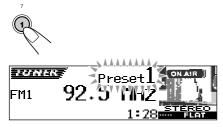
Tune in to a station (in this example, of 92.5 MHz).



lower frequencies



3 Press and hold the number button (in this example, 1) for more than 2 seconds.



The display pattern automatically changes like the above pattern (see page 15). The preset number flashes for about 5 seconds, then the previous display pattern resumes.

4 Repeat the above procedure to store other stations into other preset numbers.

Notes:

- A previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

Tuning in to a preset station

You can easily tune in to a preset station. Remember that you must store stations first. If vou have not stored them vet. see "Storing stations in memory" on pages 13 and 14.

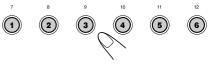
Selecting a preset station directly

Select the band (FM1 - 3, AM).

- 1 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.
- 2 Press and hold SRC. Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

→ FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM-

2 Select the number (1 - 6) for the preset station you want.



Note:

1

You can also use the \blacktriangle *(up) or* \blacktriangledown *(down) button on* the unit to select the next or previous preset stations. Each time you press the \blacktriangle (up) or \checkmark (down) button, the next or previous preset station is tuned in.

When using the remote controller

- 1 Press FM or AM.
 - · When selecting the FM bands, press FM repeatedly until the band you want is selected.



2 Press the number buttons (1 to 6) while holding SHIFT (S).



Note:

You can also use the PRESET (FOLDER) ▲ / ▼ buttons for selecting a preset station.



<u>Selecting a preset station using the</u> preset station list

If you forget which stations are stored in which preset numbers, you can check the preset station list, then select your desired station.

Select the band (FM1 – 3, AM).

- 1 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.
- Press and hold SRC. Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

→ FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM-

2 Press and hold ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) until the preset station list for the current band (FM1, FM2, FM3, or AM) appears on the display.



TUNER 1		0 105.9
FM1 P1 2 Preset	89.9	B Rock
STEREO	MHH	@ POP

Notes:

- You can show the other FM band preset station lists (FM1, FM2, or FM3) by pressing ▲ (up) or ▼ (down).
- If a name has been assigned to a station (see page 57), it will be shown instead of the station frequency.

3 Select the number (1 – 6) for the preset station you want.



Changing the display pattern

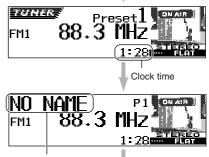
By pressing DISP (D), you can change the information shown on the display.



Each time you press the button, the display patterns change as follows:



Appears only when selecting a preset station number.



If a name has been assigned to a station, it will be shown instead of "NO NAME."



PLAYABLE DISCS

Discs you can play:

Disc Type	Mark (Logo)		Video Format	Region Code*
DVD Video			NTSC/PAL	4 ALL
Video CD	DIGITAL VIDEO	Video CD	NTSC/PAL	
Audio CD				
MP3 disc	CD-Rs or CD-RWs including MP3 files with the file extension code <mp3>. They must be recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.</mp3>			

- On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.
- The following discs cannot be played back;
 - DVD-Audio, DVD-ROM, DVD-RAM, DVD-R, DVD-RW, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

* Note on Region Code

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include "4."



Examples:

If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

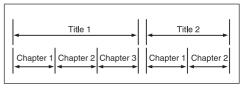
"REGION CODE ERROR!" appears on the monitor, and "Please Eject" flashes on the display. (If the control panel is not yet closed, the disc ejects automatically.)

Disc structure

DVD

A DVD disc consists of **Titles**, and each title may be divided into **Chapters**.

For example, if a DVD disc contains some movies, each movie may have its own title number, and it may be further divided into chapters.



Video CD (VCD) and Audio CD (CD)

On the other hand, a VCD or CD consists of **Tracks**.

In general, each song has its own track number. (On some discs, each track may also be divided by **Indexes**.)

When playing back a VCD with the Playback Control (PBC) function, you can select what to view using the menu shown on the monitor. (While operating a VCD using the menu, some of the functions such as Repeat and Track Search may not work.)



MP3 discs

MP3 is an abbreviation of Motion Picture Experts Group 1 (or MPEG-1) Audio Layer 3. MP3 is simply a file format with a data compression. By using MP3 format, one CD-R or CD-RW can contain 10 times as much data as a regular CD can.

On an MP3 disc, files (also called "tracks" and both words are used interchangeably in this manual) are usually grouped into a folder. Folders can also include other folders, creating hierarchical layers of folders.

This unit can recognize up to 150 files per folder, and up to 99 folders per disc (up to 14,850 files). The unit ignores those exceeding the maximum number and cannot play them back.

 All folders on the disc are counted in the total number of 150, even a folder which does not include any MP3 files.



Notes for MP3 disc

- MP3 discs require a longer readout time, which differs due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration.
- This unit supports "multi-session" discs.
- This unit cannot play "packet write" discs.
- The unit can play MP3 files with the correct extension code—<.mp3> (case insensitive—any combination of upper and/or lower is acceptable)
- It is recommended that MP3 files be recorded at a sample rate of 44.1 kHz and at a data transfer rate of 128 kbps.
- For more information about MP3 discs, see "A Guide to MP3" (separate volume).

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT/2nd AUDIO OUT):

2-channel signal is emitted.

When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—ANALOG DOWN MIX: see page 46)

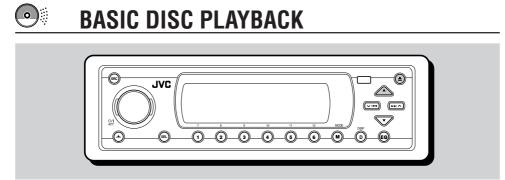
• Through DIGITAL OUT (optical): Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*, DTS**, MPEG Multichannel) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 71.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multichannel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" to the correct value. (See page 46.)

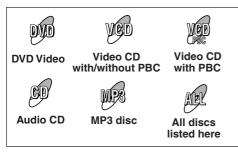
About Dual Zone

While you are listening to the radio, CD changer, or external component through the speakers built into your car compartment, you can listen to the playback sound of this DVD/CD player using the headphones connected to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug at the same time.

- For details, see "DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS" on page 30.
- * Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- ** "DTS" and "DTS Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.



The following marks used in this manual indicate the playable discs.



Before performing any operations, make sure the following....

- To watch the playback pictures, select the an appropriate video system (NTSC or PAL) to match it to the connected monitor. (See page 53.)
- Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control the CD and MP3 playback by referring to the monitor screen.
- For DVD playback, you can change the Setup Menu setting to your preference. (See pages 43 46.)
- When you want to operate the DVD/CD player using the buttons on the control panel, see "OTHER DISC OPERATIONS" on pages 35 to 42.

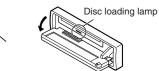
If " \bigotimes "appears on the monitor when

pressing a button, the disc cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

 In some cases, without showing " ()," operations will not be accepted.

Starting playback

Open the control panel.



2 Insert a disc into the loading slot.

The disc loading lamp start flashing, and the unit draws in the disc automatically.

DO NOT insert a disc while the disc loading lamp is flashing* or is not lit**.

- * Flashing: while loading or ejecting a disc
- ** Not lit: when a disc has been loaded.

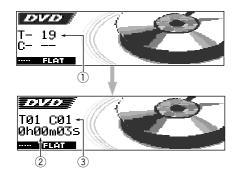
3 Close the control panel by hand.



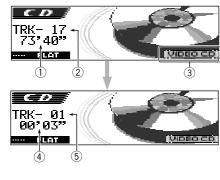
The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically. (If a disc is CD, VCD without the PBC function, or MP3, playback will be repeated until you stop it.)



 If a menu appears while playing a DVD or VCD with PBC function, see "Menu operations" on page 24. • Display indications when inserting a DVD:

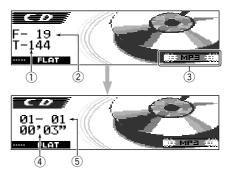


- ① Total title number
- Elapsed playing time of the current title
- $\ensuremath{\textcircled{3}}$ Current title number and chapter number
- Display indications when inserting a VCD or CD:



- 1 Total playback time of the disc
- Total track number
- ③ VIDEO CD indicator: appears only when playing back a Video CD.
- Elapsed playing time of the current track
- ⑤ Current track number

• Display indications when inserting an MP3 disc



- ① Total track number
- 2 Total folder number
- ③ MP3 indicator
- ④ Elapsed playing time of the current track
- $\ensuremath{\textcircled{5}}$ Current folder number and track number

Note:

When a new folder starts playing, its folder name is shown on the display (the display pattern automatically changes for a while—see page 42.)

Caution:

When you start playing a Mixed-CD, playback will stop at the beginning of the first track (with [00'00"] shown for the elapsed playing time). If this happens, skipping to the second track or higher will start playback from the newly selected track.

• For details about the Mixed-CD, refer to "A Guide to MP3" (separate volume).

Notes:

- When a disc is already in the loading slot, selecting "DISC" as the source starts disc play.
- This unit cannot read or play an MP3 file without the extension code <mp3>.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects (if the control panel is open). If the control panel is closed, the source changes to the previously selected source, "Please Eject" flashes on the display.



To stop playback temporarily

Press **II on the remote controller**. "Pause" flashes on the display.





· For DVD and VCD only: A still picture appears

Frame by Frame Playback—You can advance the still picture frame by frame by pressing the **II** repeatedly.

To resume normal speed, press ►.

Slow Motion Playback— You can advance the still picture in slow motion by pressing ►► or ◄. Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:



To resume normal speed, press ►.

Notes:

- No sound comes out during Reverse Slow Motion
 Playback
- When playing a VCD, Reverse Slow Motion Playback is prohibited.

To replay the previous scenes —One Touch Replay



Press \blacktriangleright on the remote controller (or \blacktriangle (up) on the control panel) during play.

The playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position.

Notes:

- This function works only within the same title.
- For some DVDs, this function does not work.

To stop playback

Press on the remote controller.

- Except for MP3 discs: This unit can remember the end point (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from where it has been stopped. (Resume play)
- For MP3 discs: This unit can remember the last playing track (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from the beginning of the same track.

To eject a disc

Press **A** on the control panel.

Playback stops and the control panel flips down. The disc comes out of the loading slot.

Locating a particular title/ chapter/track

To go to the next or previous chapter/tracks



For DVD: During play or pause

Press ►►I to go ahead to the beginning of the next chapter/track. Each time you press the button, the beginning of the next chapter/track is located (and played back).

Press I to go back to the beginning of the current chapter/track.

Each time you press the button, the beginning of the previous chapter/track is located (and played back).

Note:

Playback will not start automatically if you locate the chapter/track while a disc is pausing or not playing.

To locate a particular title/chapter/track directly

- For DVD: During play or pause—select a chapter While stopped—select a title
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in
- For VCD: while PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

From the remote controller:

While holding SHIFT (S), press number buttons to select a title, chapter, or track number you want.





Examples:

- To select number 5, press 5 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 10, press 10 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3 while pressing SHIFT (S).

Notes:

- If you directly select the track number for a VCD with the PBC function while it is not playing, playback starts with PBC function canceled. (See page 24).
- Playback will not start automatically if you select a chapter or track during pause.

Locating a particular folder





Press FOLDER (PRESET) \blacktriangle to select the next folder. Each time you press the button, the next folder is located and the first track in it starts playing.

Press FOLDER (PRESET) \checkmark to select the previous folder. Each time you press the button, the previous folder is located and the first track in it starts playing.

Note:

If a folder does not contain any MP3 tracks, it is skipped.

On-screen guide icons



During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

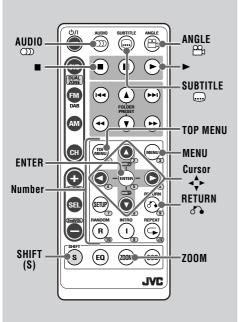
- Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (for DVD only).
- Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (for DVD only).
- Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (for DVD only).
- ►: Appears when you press ►.
- 🔲 : 🛛 Appea
 - Appears when you press II.

: Appears when you start forward slow motion. (Slow motion speed also appears.) (for DVD and VCD only).

- Appears when you start reverse slow motion. (Slow motion speed also appears.) (for DVD only).
- Appears when you start forward search. (Search speed also appears.)
- Appears when you start reverse search. (Search speed also appears.)
- Appears when you select repeat mode (see page 28).



DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS



Selecting subtitles



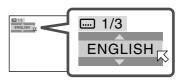
While playing a disc containing subtitles in different languages, you can select which subtitle to display.

 You can also set your favorite subtitle language as the initial language shown on the monitor. (See pages 43 to 45.)

Select a desired subtitle language.



The following pop-up window appears on the monitor. Each time you press the button, the subtitle language changes.



Ex. When the disc has 3 selections— English, French, Spanish and no subtitle (OFF)

Notes:

- When the pop-up window is shown, you can also select the subtitle languages by pressing cursor buttons (▲/▼).
- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the subtitle language without using the disc menu is prohibited.



Selecting audio languages

DVDVED

For DVD:

While playing a disc containing multiple audio languages (ex. English, French, Spanish), you can select the language to listen to.

• You can also set your favorite language as the initial audio language. (See pages 43 to 45.)

For VCD:

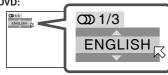
When you play a VCD, you can select the audio channel to play. This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.

Select a desired audio language (or audio channel).

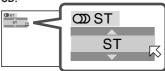


The following pop-up window appears on the monitor. Each time you press the button, the audio language (or audio channel) changes.

• For DVD:



- Ex. When the disc has 3 selections-English, French, and Spanish
- For VCD:



- ST: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.
- L: To listen to the L (left) audio channel.
- R: To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

Notes:

- When the pop-up window is shown, you can also select the audio languages (or audio channels) by pressing cursor buttons (▲/▼).
- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting multi-angle views



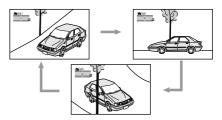
While playing a disc containing multi-angle views, you can view the same scene at different angles.

Select a desired view angle.



The following pop-up window appears on the monitor. Each time you press the button, the view angle changes.





Ex.: When the disc has 3 multi-angle views

Note:

When the pop-up window is shown, you can also select the multi-angle views by pressing cursor buttons $(\land \land \checkmark)$.

Menu operations



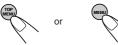
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PBC (PlayBack Control) function.

While playing a DVD:

DVD discs generally have their own menus or title lists. A title list usually contains titles of movies and songs recorded. On the other hand, a menu usually contains various information about the disc and playback selections.

Press TOP MENU or MENU.

A title list or menu will appear on the monitor.



2 Select the item you want from the menu or the title list, by pressing cursor buttons (▲ / ▼ / ► / ◄) then ENTER.

The unit starts playback of the selected item.



• On some discs, you can also select items by pressing the number buttons corresponding to the item numbers listed.

To return to the previous menu

Press RETURN &.

To cancel the title list or menu

Press TOP MENU or MENU.

If " \bigotimes "appears on the monitor in step 1, the disc does not have a title list or menu.

While playing a VCD:

The PBC (PlayBack Control) function allows you to operate the VCD using menus. When you start playback, a menu will automatically appear on the monitor.

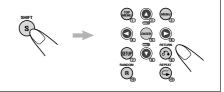
 A menu may be a list of items, divided screens, or some moving pictures.

Select the item you want from the menu.

- When a list of items is displayed on the monitor, press the number buttons to select an item.
- When "▶" or "SELECT" is displayed on the monitor, press ▶ (or ENTER if pressing ▶ does not work) to start playback.

How to select items using the number buttons

- To select number 5, press 5 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 10, press 10 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3 while pressing SHIFT (S).



To return to the previous menu

Press RETURN 🔥.

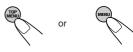


To cancel the PBC playback

You can cancel the menu-driven operations (PBC function):

- 1 Press to stop playback.
- 2 Press number buttons to select a track. Normal playback starts from the selected track.

To resume the PBC function again, press TOP MENU or MENU.





Zoom in



You can zoom into a particular portion of the picture while playing a DVD or VCD.

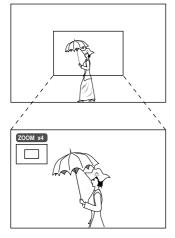
Zoom in to the picture.



The pop-up window appears on the monitor to show the current magnification. Each time you press the button, magnification change as follows:

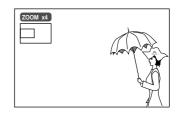
$$\Rightarrow x 2 \Rightarrow x 4 \Rightarrow x 8 \Rightarrow x 1 \Rightarrow x 2 \Rightarrow x 4 \Rightarrow$$
$$x 8 \Rightarrow \cdots$$





2 Move the zoomed-in portion on the monitor.





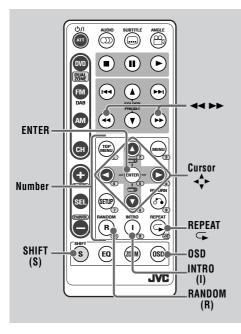
Note:

While zoomed in, the picture may look coarse.

To cancel Zoom, press ENTER or press ZOOM repeatedly until "ZOOM x1" appears.



ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS



Searching for a particular point

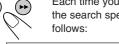
Forward/Reverse Search



You can search for a particular point while playing a disc.

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter or

track, press ►► or ◄< while playing a disc.



Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

 $x2 \Rightarrow x5 \Rightarrow x10 \Rightarrow x20 \Rightarrow x60^*$

To resume normal speed, press ►.

When using the buttons on the control panel Press and hold \rightarrow or \checkmark i \triangleleft while playing a disc.

The search speed changes: $x2 \Rightarrow x10$.

• If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

Notes:

- * "x60" is only for DVD.
- When playing an MP3 disc, no sound comes out during Search.
- When playing a DVD or VCD, no sound comes out during x5, x10, x20, and x60 Search.
- Reverse Search stops automatically when it reaches the beginning of the disc. Playback resumes at normal speed.

<u>Time Search</u>



You can start playing a particular point by specifying the elapsed playing time of the current title (for DVD) and of the disc (CD and VCD).

- For DVD: During play or pause.
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Press OSD twice.



The on-screen bar appears on the monitor.

• For details on the on-screen bar, see pages 32 and 33.

 DVD-VIDEO
 DCI Digital 5.1 ch
 TITLE 33
 CHAP 33
 TOTAL 1:25:58
 ►

 TIME
 ◯ OFF
 ② →
 CHAP. →
 ① 1/3
 III 1/5
 은1 1/3



 DVD-VIDEO
 DCI Digital 5.1ch
 TITLE 33
 CHAP 33
 TOTAL 1:25:58
 ►

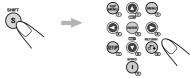
 TIME
 ▲) OFF
 ④) ←
 CHAP. →) ①) 1/3
 □) 1/3
 □) 1/5
 🗠 1/3

 TIME

 □)
 1/3
 □) 1/5
 🗠 1/3

The time entry window appears.

3 Press number buttons (0 to 9) to enter the time while holding SHIFT (S).





Example (for DVD VIDEO)

To play back from 2(H):34(M):00(S) Press number buttons 2, 3, then 4.

TIME 2:34:__

To play back from 58(M):00(S) Press number buttons 0, 5, then 8.

TIME 0:58:__

Example (for Video CD/Audio CD)

To play back from 23(M):40(S) Press number buttons 2, 3, then 4.



You do not have to press "0" to enter the trailing zeros.

To correct a mistake

Press cursor button ◄ repeatedly to move back to the digit where you entered a wrong number, and reenter the correct one.

4 Finish entry.

The unit starts playback from the specified time.

To erase the on-screen bar, press OSD once.

Chapter Search



You can select a specific chapter when a DVD is inserted.

Press OSD twice.

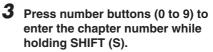


The on-screen bar appears on the monitor.

• For details about the on-screen bar, see pages 32 and 33.

DVD-VIDEO	Digital 5.1ch	TITLE 33 CHAP 33	TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME COFF	CHAP.	★ ① 1/3 m 1/5	₩ 1/3

The chapter number entry window appears.





- To select number 5, press 5 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 10, press 1, then 0 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 23, press 2, then 3 while pressing SHIFT (S).

To correct a mistake

- To correct a two digit number, enter the correct number again.
- To correct a single digit number, press 0 first, then enter the correct number.

4 Finish entry.



The unit starts playback from the selected chapter.

To erase the on-screen bar, press OSD once.



Playing in various play modes

You can use any of three methods to activate various play modes.

- Using the direct buttons on the remote controller.
- Using the on-screen bar (see page 32).
- Using the buttons on the control panel (see page 38).

In the following explanation, how to use the direct buttons on the remote controller is explained.

Repeat Play



You can repeat a title, chapter, track, or disc endlessly.

• For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Select the repeat mode you want.



The menu bar icon appears on the monitor to show the selected mode. Each time you press the button, the repeat mode changes as follows:

• For DVD:

\rightarrow CHAP \rightarrow TITLE \neg	
OFF ←	

- CHAP: Current (or specified) chapter will be repeated.
 CHAP | indicator appears on
- TITLE: Current title will be repeated.
 Current title indicator appears on the monitor.
- OFF: Repeat Play is canceled.
 <u>OFF</u> indicator appears on the monitor.

• For VCD/CD:

TRACK ----- OFF

- TRACK: Current (or specified) track will be repeated.
 - **<u>CTRACK</u>** indicator appears on the monitor.

• OFF: Track Repeat is canceled. All the tracks in the disc will be repeated.

COFF indicator appears on the monitor.

For MP3:	→ TRACK → FOLDER OFF ←
• TRACK:	Current (or specified) track will be repeated. • "REPEAT TRACK" appears on the MP3 CONTROL screen (see page 34).
• FOLDER:	 All the tracks in the current (or specified) folder will be repeated. "REPEAT FOLDER" appears on the MP3 CONTROL screen (see page 34).
• OFF:	Track Repeat and Folder Repeat is canceled. All the tracks in the disc will be repeated.

Notes:

- On some DVDs, Repeat Play may be canceled by the disc itself.
- On CD, VCD, and MP3 discs, Repeat Play mode cannot be turned off.
- Repeat Play mode will be canceled when you start playing back a VCD with the PBC function.

Random Play

• OFF:



You can play back tracks on a disc (or in a folder for MP3 discs) at random.

• For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Select the random mode you want.

	The menu bar icon appears on the monitor to show the selected mode. Each time you press the button, the random mode changes as follows:	
• For CD/VCD:	DISC> OFF	
• DISC:	All the tracks in the disc will be played at random. • RND. indicator on the menu	

 RND, indicator on the menu bar (see page 33) is highlighted in blue. Random Play is canceled. Intro Scan



You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

• For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Select the intro scan mode you want.



The menu bar icon appears on the monitor to show the selected mode. Each time you press the button, the intro scan mode changes as follows:

• For CD/VCD:

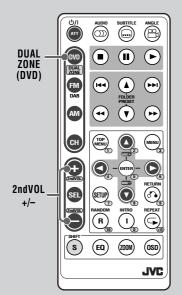
TRACK ←→→ OFF

- TRACK: The beginnings of all the tracks in the disc will be played.
 INTRO indicator on the menu bar (see page 33) is highlighted in blue.
- OFF: Intro Scan is canceled.

• For MP3:	FOLDER → DISC OFF ←	• For MP3:	→TRACK → FOLDER OFF ←
• FOLDER:	All the tracks in the folder will be played at random, then move to the next folder and so on. • "RND FOLDER" appears on the MP3 CONTROL screen	• TRACK:	The beginnings of all the tracks in the disc will be played. • "INTRO TRACK" appears on the MP3 CONTROL screen (see page 34).
• DISC:	(see page 34). All the tracks in the disc will be played at random. • "RND DISC" appears on the MP3 CONTROL screen (see page 34).	• FOLDER:	 in all folders will be played. "INTRO FOLDER" appears on the MP3 CONTROL screen (see page 34).
• OFF:	Random Play is canceled.	• OFF:	Intro Scan is canceled.



DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS



- DO NOT put on the headphones while driving a car. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- DO NOT put on the headphones before adjusting the headphone volume level properly; otherwise, it may damage your hearing.

For Dual Zone operations, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the receiver as usual, not at the monitor.

Listening with headphones



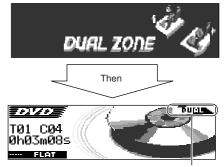
By connecting headphones to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug on the rear, you can listen to the playback sound through the DVD/CD player while listening to another source (except AM) through the speakers.

You can activate Dual Zone while listening to any source.

- You can operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.
- While holding SHIFT (S), press DUAL ZONE (DVD) to activate Dual Zone.



Each time you press DUAL ZONE (DVD), Dual Zone is turned on and off alternately.



DUAL indicator appears.

The source automatically changes to "DISC."

To select a different source (except AM) to listen through the speakers, press SRC on the control panel. By using the buttons on the control panel, you can operate the newly selected source without affecting Dual Zone operations.



2 Adjust the headphone volume through the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug.



- **3** Operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller by referring to the monitor screen.
 - When Dual Zone is in use, you can only operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.

To control the other sources (except AM) while Dual Zone is activated, use the buttons on the control panel.

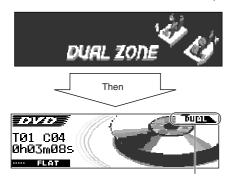
On the control panel:

You can also activate and deactivate Dual Zone, but can neither control the DVD/CD player nor adjust the headphone volume level.

- To adjust the headphone level, use the remote controller.
- Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode while listening to any source.
 "Mode" appears on the display.



 Press number button 6 while "Mode" is still on the display.



DUAL indicator appears.

The source automatically changes to "DISC."

To cancel Dual Zone operations, repeat steps **1** and **2** ("Dual Zone Off" appears on the display.)

When the sounds through the rear speakers are troublesome while listening with the headphones

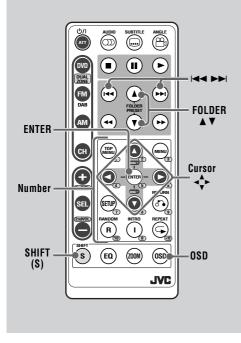
You can deactivate the rear speaker sound output.

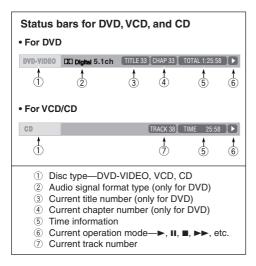
- See also "Changing the general settings (PSM)" on page 50.
- 1 Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display.
- 2 Press number button 5 to select "AUDIO"— Audio category of the PSM settings.
- 3 Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ to select "Rear SPK."
- 4 Turn the control dial counterclockwise to select "Off."
- **5** Press SEL (select) to finish the setting.

To reactivate the rear speakers, repeat the same procedure and select "On" in step 4 by turning the control dial clockwise.



OSD DISC OPERATIONS





Note:

While operating an MP3 disc on the monitor screen, see page 34.

Operations on the monitor screen



You can show the on-screen bar on the monitor, and operate the disc using the on-screen bar.

Basic procedure for DVD, VCD and CD

Press OSD once.



A status bar for the type of disc inserted appears on the monitor. • For details, see the left column.

Note:

When you start playing a CD, the status bar automatically appears.

2 Press OSD again.



A menu bar appears under the status bar.

• For details about the items on the menu bar, see page 33.

• For DVD

DVD-VIDEO DC	Digital 5.1ch	TITLE 33 CHAP 33	TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME COFF	CHAP.	★ ① 1/3 1/5	⇔ ₁ 1/3

• For VCD

VCD	TRACK 38 TIME 25:58
TIME COFF	(d) → INTRO RND. (DD) ST

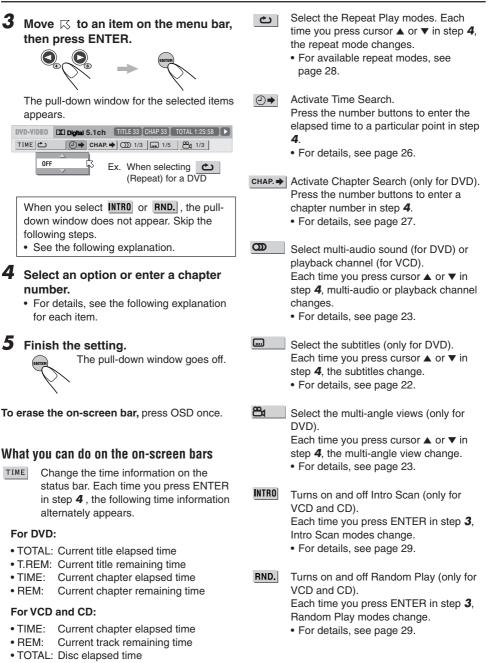
• For CD



Note:

While playing a CD Text, the disc information will also be shown on the monitor. (The maximum number of the characters shown on the monitor is 64, while 255 characters on the display of the receiver.)





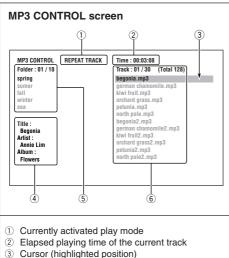


Basic procedure for MP3 discs



While playing an MP3 disc, the following MP3 CONTROL screen always shows on the monitor. By referring to this screen, you can easily operate the MP3 disc.

- Up to 32 characters can be shown for the file names on the monitor, while 64 characters on the display of the receiver.
- For more details about MP3 discs, refer to "A Guide to MP3" (separate volume).



- 4 ID3 Tag information (see page 68)
- 5 Folder column—folder names
- (Ex. The first folder is selected out of 10 folders)
 Only 5 folders can be listed at a time.
- (6) Track column—track names (Ex. The first track is selected out of 30 tracks in the current folder. 128 tracks are included in the disc)
 - Only 12 tracks can be listed at a time.

Operations from the remote controller:

To select (highlight) a "Folder" column or "Track" column on the screen, press cursor ► or ◄.

To select a folder, press cursor \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown when the cursor (highlighted position) is in the "Folder" column.

If there are unshown folders, they will appear in this column as you selecting folders.

 By pressing FOLDER (PRESET) ▲ or FOLDER (PRESET) ▼, you can change the folder without respect to the cursor (highlighted) position.

To select a track, press cursor \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown when the cursor (highlighted position) is in the "Track" column.

If there are unshown tracks, they will appear in this column as you selecting tracks.

 By pressing →→I or I◄◄, you can change the tracks without respect to the cursor (highlighted) position.

To select Repeat Play modes, press REPEAT

($\boldsymbol{\varsigma}$) repeatedly until the Repeat Play mode you want appears on the screen.

• For details about the Repeat Play modes, see page 28.

To select Random Play modes, press

RANDOM (R) repeatedly until the Random Play mode you want appears on the screen.

• For details about the Random Play modes, see page 29.

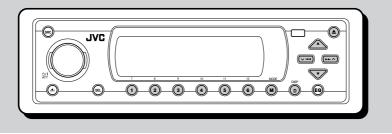
To select Intro Scan modes, press INTRO (I) repeatedly until the Intro Scan mode you want appears on the screen.

• For details about the Intro Scan modes, see page 29.

Note:

When using the buttons on the control panel, you can use various methods for performing the above operations. These different methods are explained in "OTHER DISC OPERATIONS" on pages 35 to 42.

OTHER DISC OPERATIONS



In this section, you can learn how to use the buttons on the control panel in order to operate the DVD/CD player.

Basic disc playback

To stop playback



Press ▼ (down).

• This unit can remember the end point, and when you start playback again, playback begins from where it has been stopped. (Resume play)

To start playback again



Press ▲ (up).

Playback begins from where it has been stopped.

Normally disc playback automatically starts in the following cases:

- When you insert a disc Playback starts from the beginning of the disc.
- When change the source to "DISC" (DVD/CD player) if a disc has been inserted
 Playback starts from where it has been stopped. (Resume play)

Note:

If you press the button during DVD playback, the playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position. (See page 20: One Touch Replay)

To eject a disc



Press A.

Playback stops and the control panel flips down. The disc comes out of the loading slot.

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter/ track (Forward/Reverse Search)



Press and hold $\rightarrow 1$ \wedge , while playing a disc, to fast-forward the chapter/track. The search speed changes: x2 \rightarrow x10.

Press and hold \checkmark I=4, while playing a disc, to reverse the chapter/track. The search speed changes: $x2 \Rightarrow x10$.

Notes:

- When playing an MP3 disc, no sound comes out during Search.
- When playing a DVD or VCD, no sound comes out during x10 Search.
- Reverse Search stops automatically when it reaches the beginning of the disc. Playback resumes at normal speed.

To go to the next or previous chapter/tracks

• For DVD: During play or pause.

 Press >> A briefly to go ahead to the beginning of the next chapter/track.
 Each time you press the button consecutively, the beginning of the next chapter/track is located and played back.

Press \checkmark I \triangleleft briefly to go back to the beginning of the current chapter/track.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the beginning of the previous chapter/track is located and played back.

Note:

Playback will not start automatically if you locate the chapter/track while a disc is pausing or not playing.

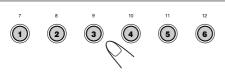


Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc



To locate a particular title/chapter/track directly

- For DVD: During play or pause—select a chapter
 - While stopped—select a title
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.



Press the number button corresponding to the title/chapter/track number to start its playback.

- To select a number from 1 6: Press 1 (7) – 6 (12) briefly.
- To select a number from 7 12: Press and hold 1 (7) – 6 (12) for more than 1 second.

Notes:

- If you directly select the track number for a VCD with the PBC function while it is not playing, playback starts with PBC function canceled. (See page 24).
- Playback will not start automatically if you select a chapter or track during pause.

To go to a chapter/track quickly



- For DVD: During play or pause.
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.
- Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode.
 "Mode" appears on the display.



While playing a DVD:



While playing a VCD or CD:

TRK- 15 00°23"	X	Mode	+10▲ Track -10▼
INTRO RET	RND	OFF	DUAL

While playing an MP3 disc:

01-01 00'23"	8	Mode	+10⊡ Track -10⊡
INTRO RPT	RND	OFF	DUAL

2 Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down), while "Mode" is still on the display. First time you press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down), the chapter/track skips

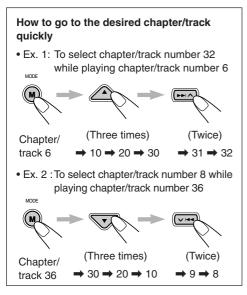


to the nearest higher or lower chapter/track with a chapter/track number of an even multiple ten (ex. 10th, 20th, 30th). Then, each time you press the button, you can skip 10 chapters/tracks (see "How to go to the desired chapter/track quickly" that follows).

Notes:

- For CD and VCD: If you perform this operation while a disc is not playing, playback will not start automatically.
- Except for DVD: After the last track, the first track will be selected, and vice versa.
- While playing an MP3 disc, this operation is possible only within a folder.





To skip to the next or previous folder





Press ▲ (up) while playing a disc to skip to the next folder. Each time you press the button consecutively, the next folder is located and the first track in the folder starts playing.

Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ (down) while playing a disc to skip back to the previous folder.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the previous folder is located and the first track in the folder starts playing.

Note:

If the folder does not contain any MP3 tracks, it is skipped.

Selecting a folder/track to play using the lists



You can show the folder name and track name lists on the display while playing a disc, then select the folder or track you want.

To select a folder and start playback

Press and hold ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) so that the folder name list of the inserted disc appears on the display.



The name of the currently playing folder will be highlighted on the display.

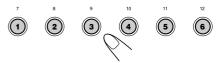
Current folder number

	∃ Is-m
01- Folder	8 Behex
BK-Shi	le SLK

Notes:

- The display can show only six items at a time. You can show the other items on the next lists by pressing ▲ (up) or ▼ (down).
- If you press ►► ∧ or ▼ I ◄◄, the track name list of the current playing folder appears. (See the following column.)
- Only folders including MP3 tracks will be listed.

2 Select the number (1 – 6) for the folder you want to play.





To select a track and start playback

Press and hold ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) so that the folder name list of the inserted disc appears on the display.



The name of the currently playing folder will be highlighted on the display.

Current folder number

CD.	DISCO	∰ls−m
<u>01-</u> Folder	POPS	🖲 Behex
I UIUEI FLAT	₿K-Shi	€ SLK

2 Press ►► ∧ or ∨ I < to show the track list of the current folder.



Each time you press the button, the lists on the display changes as follows:

Current track number



Note:

The display can shows only six items at a time. You can show the other items on the next lists by pressing \blacktriangle (up) or \blacktriangledown (down).

3 Select the number (1 – 6) for the track you want to play.



Selecting playback modes

Repeat Play



You can repeat a title, chapter, track, or disc.

- For DVD: During play or pause.
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.
- 1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode. "Mode" appears on the display.



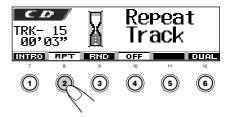




Ex. While playing a DVD

2 Press number button 2, while "Mode" is still on the display.

Each time you press the button, repeat play mode changes as follows:



Ex. While playing a CD



• For DVD:	Chapter → Title → Off ←	
Chapter:	Current (or specified) chapter will be repeated. • ⊂–₽₽⊤ indicator appears on the display.	
• Title:	 Current title will be repeated. T-RPT indicator appears on the display. 	
• Off:	Repeat Play is canceled.	

• For CD/VCD:	Track> Off
Track:	Current (or specified) track will be repeated. • ■• ■■ T indicator appears on the display.
• Off:	All the tracks in the disc will be repeated.

• For MP3:	→ Track → Folder → Off <
• Track:	Current (or specified) track will be repeated. • ♪ RPT indicator appears on the display.
• Folder:	 All the tracks in the current (or specified) folder will be repeated. ■ RFT indicator appears on the display.
• Off:	All the tracks in the disc will be repeated.

To cancel Repeat Play, select "Repeat Off" by pressing number button 2 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.

Notes:

- On some DVDs, Repeat Play may be canceled by the disc itself.
- On CD, VCD, and MP3 discs, Repeat Play mode cannot be turned off.
- Repeat Play mode will be canceled when you start playing back a VCD with the PBC function.

Random Play



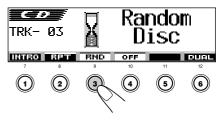
You can play back tracks on a disc (or in a folder) at random.

 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode.
 "Mode" appears on the display.

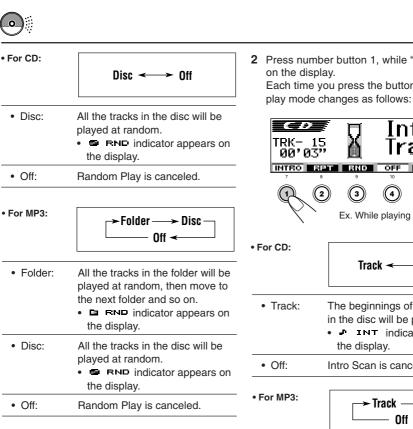


2 Press number button 3, while "Mode" is still on the display.

Each time you press the button, Random Play mode changes as follows:



Ex. While playing a CD



To cancel Random Play, select "Random Off" by pressing number button 3 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step 2.

Intro Scan



You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode. "Mode" appears on the display.



2 Press number button 1, while "Mode" is still on the display. Each time you press the button, Intro Scan

Intro TRK- 15 00'03" rack 121210 2 3 Ex. While playing a CD Track ----- Off The beginnings of all the tracks in the disc will be played. INT indicator appears on the display. Intro Scan is canceled. ► Track —> Folder -- Off 🔫 Track: The beginnings of all the tracks in the disc will be played. • J INT indicator appears on the display. Folder: The beginnings of the first tracks in all folders will be played. INT indicator appears on the display. • Off: Intro Scan is canceled.

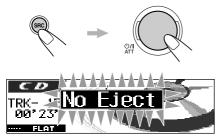
To cancel Intro Scan, select "Intro Off" by pressing number button 1 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step 2.



Prohibiting disc ejection

You can prohibit disc ejection and can lock a disc in the loading slot.

While pressing SRC, press and hold ウ/I ATT for more than 2 seconds.



"No Eject" flashes on the display for about 5 seconds, and the disc is locked and cannot be ejected.

To cancel the prohibition and unlock the disc

While pressing SRC, press \bullet/I ATT again for more than 2 seconds.

"Eject OK" flashes on the display for about 5 seconds, and the disc is unlocked.



Changing the display pattern

By pressing DISP (D), you can change the information shown on the display.

• If the information cannot be shown at a time, it will scroll on the display.

Some characters or symbols will not be shown (will be blanked or substituted) on the display.

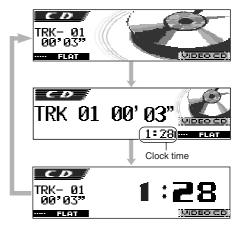


Each time you press the button, the display patterns change as follows:

While playing a DVD:



While playing a VCD:

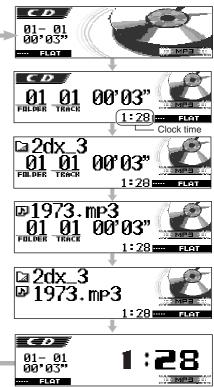




While playing a CD Text (or CD):



While playing an MP3 disc:



The above diagram shows examples of the display when "Tag" is set to "Off."

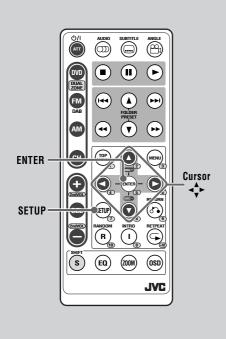
Notes:

- When the disc title/performer is shown, the disc indicator lights up. When the track title is shown, the disc (track) indicator lights up.
- If no name is assigned to the conventional CD, "NO NAME" will appear. To assign a name to a conventional CD, see page 57.
- If no disc title/performer or no track title is recorded for the CD Text, "NO NAME" will appear.

Notes:

- When the folder name is shown, the (folder) indicator lights up. When the file name is shown, the
 (file) indicator lights up.
- If "Tag" is set to "On" (see page 52), ID3 tag information will appear on the display if the disc has an ID3 tag. The and (disc) indicator appears for album name/performer; while the and (track) indicator appears for track title.

DVD SETUP MENU



Basic setting procedure

Show the Setup menu (LANGUAGE menu) on the monitor.



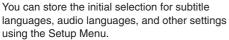
2 Select which Setup menu screen you want to use.



EX. When selecting the AUDIO screen

D. RANGE COMPRESSION ON

3 Move □ (cursor) to an item you want to set up.



• DVD Setup menu can only be displayed while a disc, except MP3 disc, is inserted and selected for the playback source.

The following operations are only possible using the remote controller, and by referring to the monitor screen.

	•	
)	AUDIO	1
2	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	ST
\sum	ANALOG DOWN MIX	ST
Ň.	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	ON

EX. When selecting ANALOG DOWN MIX

REAM/PCM

EREO

4 Press ENTER.

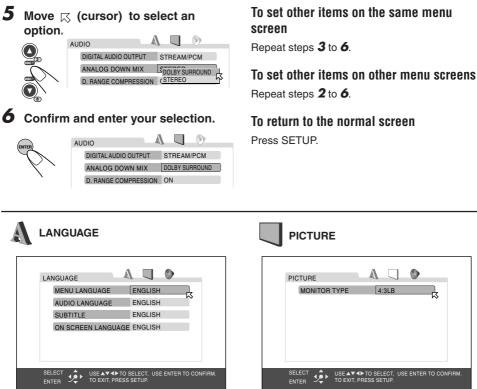


The pop-up window listing the selectable options appear on the screen.

AUDIO	
DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	STREAM/PCM
ANALOG DOWN MIX	STOLBY SURROUND
D. RANGE COMPRESSION	(STEREO

CONTINUED ON THE NEXT PAGE





You can select the initial languages for the disc menu, audio, and subtitle.

You can also select the language for the Setup menu and some indications shown on the monitor.



PICTUR	E		A		•	
MO	NITOR	TYPE	4:3L	В	<u>م</u>	5
SELECT ENTER	\$ ₽		TO SELEC RESS SETUR		NTER TO	CONFIRM.

You can select the desired options concerning picture size on the monitor.

AUDIO A AUDIO DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT STREAM/PCM ANALOG DOWN MIX STEREO D. RANGE COMPRESSION ON USE AV TO SELECT, USE ENTER TO CONFIRM. TO EXIT, PRESS SETUP. **∮**₽ ENTER

You can adjust the output sounds through this unit.



	Items	For what and options		
	MENU LANGUAGE *1	Select the initial disc menu language.		
		ENGLISH, SPANISH, FRENCH, CHINESE, GERMAN, ITALIAN, JAPANESE, and language codes from AA to ZU (see page 67).		
	AUDIO LANGUAGE *1	Select the initial audio language.		
		ENGLISH, SPANISH, FRENCH, CHINESE, GERMAN, ITALIAN, JAPANESE, and language codes from AA to ZU (see page 67).		
AGE	SUBTITLE *1	Select the initial subtitle language.		
LANGUAGE		OFF (no subtitles), ENGLISH, SPANISH, FRENCH, CHINESE, GERMAN, ITALIAN, JAPANESE, and language codes from AA to ZU (see page 67).		
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the Setup menu and some indications shown on the monitor.		
		ENGLISH, CHINESE, and SPANISH.		
	MONITOR TYPE	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.		
PICTURE	16:9 4:3 LB	 16:9 NORMAL *² Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9 and it does not have the screen size adjustment function. 16:9 AUTO Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9 and it has the screen size adjustment function. 4:3 LB (Letter Box) Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen. 4:3 PS (Pan Scan) *³ 		
	4:3 PS	Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen.		

- *1 When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
 - While playing (or pausing), you cannot change these languages. After you change any of these language settings, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.
- ^{*2} When you select "16:9 NORMAL" for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- *³ Even if "4:3 PS" is selected, the screen size may become "4:3 LB" with some DVDs. This depends on how they are recorded.



	Items	For what and options			
	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal on the rear.			
		 PCM ONLY Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital and DTS, or connecting to a recording device. DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. STREAM/PCM Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. 			
AUDIO	ANALOG DOWN MIX	When playing back a multi-channel DVD disc, this setting affects the sounds reproduced through the analog terminals.			
A		 STEREO Normally select this to enjoy and reproduce conventional 2- channel stereo sound from the original multi-channel sounds. DOLBY SURROUND Select this when you want to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround to this receiver. 			
	D.RANGE COMPRESSION	You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.			
		 AUTO: Select this to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1 channel and 2 channel software). ON: Select this to always use this function. 			

SOUND ADJUSTMENTS

Operations of this section are explained using the buttons on the control panel unless mentioned otherwise.

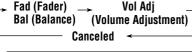
Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

 "Vol Adj" setting is required for each source except FM. Before starting "Vol Adj," select an appropriate source for which you want to make an adjustment.

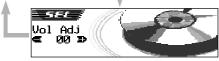
1 Select the item you want to adjust.

Each time you press the button, the adjustable items change as follows:





Canceled



Note:

You can also use the SEL button on the remote controller to call up the fader/balance adjustment screen.

Indication	To do:	Range
Fad*	Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 (Rear only) I F06 (Front only)
Bal	Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 (Left only) I R06 (Right only)
Vol Adj	Adjust and store the input level of each source.	–12 (min.) +12 (max.)

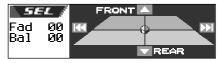
* If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."

2 Make adjustments.

• To adjust fader and balance—Fad, Bal: You can make these two adjustments at the same time, by referring to the indication on the display.



- Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) to adjust the fader.
- Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ to adjust the balance.



Note:

You can also use the $\triangleright \triangleright \mid \land or \lor \mid \checkmark \land$ buttons and FOLDER PRESET \land (up) or FOLDER PRESET \lor (down) on the remote controller for adjustment.

 To adjust the input level of each source —Vol Adj:

This setting is required for each source except FM. Before making an adjustment, select an appropriate source for which you want to make an adjustment. Once you have made an adjustment, it is memorized, and you will not need to adjust the volume level each time you change the source.

Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.



To increase the level

To decrease the level



Selecting preset sound modes (iEQ: intelligent equalizer)

You can select a preset sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer) suitable to the music genre.

• There is a time limit in doing the following procedure. If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 1 again.

Available sound modes:

- FLAT (Flat)
 H.ROCK
- (C • RE
- (Hard Rock)
- (Rhythm and Blues)
- POP (Popular music)
- JAZZ (Jazz music)
- (Jazz music) • DANCE
 - (Dance music)

- (Country music) **REGGAE** (Reggae)

Country

- (Classical music)
- USER 1 USER 2
- USER 3

Press EQ (equalizer) once.



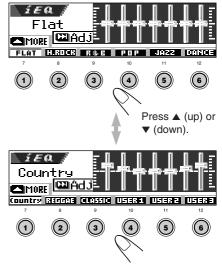
Last selected sound mode is called up.



Ex.: If you have selected "Flat" previously

• If you press the button twice, the level meter selection screen appears (see page 10).

- **2** Press the number button to select the sound mode you want.
 - This unit has two sound mode selection screens. To move to the other screen, press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down).



To cancel the preset sound mode, select "FLAT" in step **2**.

To exit from the preset sound mode (iEQ), press EQ (equalizer) repeatedly or wait for about 5 seconds.

Note:

For details about the preset settings of each sound mode, see page 66.



Storing your own sound adjustments

You can adjust the sound modes to your preference and store your own adjustments in memory (User 1, User 2, and User 3).

- There is a time limit in doing the following procedure. If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 1 again.
- Press EQ (equalizer) once.



Ex.: When you have selected "Country" previously

 If you press the button twice, the level meter selection screen appears (see page 10).

2 Select the sound mode you want to adjust.

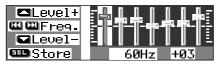


 This unit has two sound mode selection screens. To move to the other screen, press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down).

Enter the sound adjustment mode.



The following sound mode adjustment screen appears on the display.



4 Make adjustments as you like.





- Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I ◄◄ to select the frequency band—60Hz, 150Hz, 400Hz, 1kHz, 2.4kHz, 6kHz, 12kHz.
- Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) to adjust the level of the selected band within the range of -05 to +05.
- 3) Repeat steps 1) and 2) to adjust the other frequency bands.

5 Store the adjustment you made.

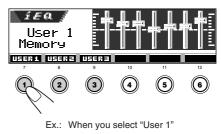


The confirmation message appears—whether you want to store the adjustment.



If you want to cancel the adjustments, press EQ (equalizer).

- Adjustment you made remains effective until you select another sound mode.
- 6 Select one of the user sound modes (User 1, User 2, or User 3) you want to store into.



OTHER MAIN FUNCTIONS

Operations of this section are explained using the buttons on the control panel unless mentioned otherwise.

Changing the general settings (PSM)

You can change the items listed in the table on page 51 by using the PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) control.

 The PSM items are grouped into five categories—MOVIE, CLOCK, DISP (display), AUDIO, and COLOR.

Basic Procedure

Ex. To change "Contrast"

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display.



Movie	⊡Grar	C	
	¶ Int	Demo	Ð
	(DISP		नमनस

2 Press number button (in this example, 3) to select one of the PSM categories.



The first-listed item in the selected category appears.

3 Select the PSM item you want to adjust.





• By pressing ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ repeatedly, you can also move to other categories.

4 Adjust the PSM item selected.





- 5 Repeat steps 2 to 4 to adjust the other PSM items if necessary.
- **6** Finish the setting.





Preferred Setting Mode (PSM) items

	Ind	ications	Selectable	values/items	Factory-preset settings	See page
MOVIE	Graphics	Movie demonstration	t, (9, 52
МО	KeyIn CFM	Key in confirmation		→ Short Dff ₊	Long	52
	Clock Hr	Hour adjustment	1 – 12	(0 – 23)	1 (1:00)	9
CLOCK	Clock Min	Minute adjustment	00 -	- 59	00 (1:00)	9
	24H/12H	24 hours or 12 hours	12Hours	24Hours	12Hours	10
	Scroll	Scroll mode	C noo	→ Auto Off ₊	Once	52
	Dimmer	Dimmer mode	Auto Time Set	↔ Off ↔ On ↓	Auto	54
play)	From– To ^{*1}	Dimmer time setting	Any time	– Any time	6PM – 7AM	54
DISP (display)	Contrast	Contrast	1 -	- 10	5	52
DISP	LCD Type	Display type	Positive ↔ Negative ↓ Auto ↓		Auto	52
	Font Type	Font type	1	2	1	52
	Тад	Tag display	Off	On	On	52
	NTSC/PAL	Video system	NTSC	PAL	PAL	53
	Веер	Key-touch tone	Off	On	On	53
AUDIO	Ext Input ^{*2}	External component	Changer	Line In	Changer	53
	Rear SPK	Rear speaker output	Off	On	On	31
	Telephone	Telephone muting		→ Muting2 Off ↓	Off	53
	All SRC	Selected source	See page 55 for details Day Night 00 - 11 00 - 11		Every	55
_	User	User color selection			Day	56
COLOR	R	Red			Day: 07/Night: 05	56
	G	Green			Day: 07/Night: 05	56
	В	Blue	00	- 11	Day: 07/Night: 05	56

*1 Displayed only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."
*2 Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, and CD.



To set the movie demonstration—Graphics

When shipped from the factory, the movie has been activated.

- All Demo: If no operation is done for about 20 seconds, the movie demonstration starts automatically.
- Int Demo: If no operation is done for about 20 seconds, the movie demonstration and playback source indication appears alternately on the display.
- Off: Cancels the movie demonstration.

To select the source animation on the display—KeyIn CFM

When changing the source, the display shows the source animation. You can select the source animation on the display according to your preference.

- Long: A long source animation appears.
- Short: A short source animation appears.
- Off: Cancels the source animation.

To select the scroll mode—Scroll

You can select the scroll mode for the disc information (when the entire text cannot be shown at once).

- Once: Scrolls only once.
- Auto: Repeats the scroll (in 5-second intervals).
- Off: Cancels scroll mode.

Note:

Even if the scroll mode is set to "Off," you can scroll the display by pressing DISP (D) for more than one second.

To adjust the display contrast level —Contrast

You can adjust the display contrast level among 1 to 10.

Adjust it to make the display indications clear and legible.

To select the display illumination pattern —LCD Type

You can select the display illumination patterns according to your preference.

- Auto: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time (depending on the "Dimmer" setting); on the other hand, negative pattern will be used during the night time (depending on the "Dimmer" setting).
- Positive: Positive (normal) pattern of the display.
- Negative: Negative pattern of the display.

To select the font on the display —Font Type

You can change the font types used on the display. Select either "1" or "2" according to your preference.

To turn the tag display on or off—Tag

An MP3 file can contain file information called "ID3 Tag" where its album name, performer, track title, etc. are recorded.

There are two versions–ID3v1 (ID3 Tag version 1) and ID3v2 (ID3 Tag version 2). Only ID3v1 can be shown.

- On: Turns on the ID3 tag display while playing MP3 files.
 - If an MP3 file does not have ID3 tags, folder name and file name appear.

Note:

If you change the setting from "Off" to "On" while playing an MP3 file, the tag display will be activated when the next file starts playing.

 Off: Turns off the ID3 tag display while playing MP3 files. (Only the folder name and file name can be shown.)



To select a proper video system —NTSC/PAL

Select the appropriate video system to match it to the connected monitor.

- NTSC: Select when connecting an NTSC monitor.
- PAL: Select when connecting a PAL monitor.

To turn on/off the key-touch tone—Beep

You can deactivate the key-touch tone if you do not want it to beep each time you press a button.

- On: Activates the key-touch tone.
- Off: Deactivates the key-touch tone.

To select the external component to use —Ext Input

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied).

To use the external component as the playback source through this unit, you need to select which component—CD changer or external component—to use.

- Changer: To use the CD changer.
- Line In: To use the external component other than CD changer.

Note:

For connecting the Line Input Adapter KS-U57 and the external component, refer to the Installation/ Connection Manual (separate volume).

To select the telephone muting— Telephone

This mode is used when a cellular phone system is connected. Depending on the phone system used, select either "Muting1" or "Muting2," whichever mutes the sounds from this unit.

- Muting1: Selects this if this setting can mute the sounds when using the cellular phone.
- Muting2: Selects this if this setting can mute the sounds when using the cellular phone.
- Off: Cancels the telephone muting.

You can use the following table to keep memo of your own PSM settings.

ΛE	Graphics				
MO	KeyIn CFM				
¥	Clock Hr				
CLOCK MOVIE	Clock Min				
IJ	24H/12H				
	Scroll				
	Dimmer				
ay)	From–To				
lispl	Contrast				
DISP (display)	LCD Type				
DIS	Font Type				
	Тад				
	NTSC/PAL				
	Веер				
AUDIO	Rear SPK				
AUI	Ext Input				
	Telephone				
	All SRC				
	CD				
	Changer				
COLOR	Line in				
COL	FM				
	AM				
	User Day	R	G	в	
	User Night	R	G	в	



Selecting the dimmer mode

You can dim the display at night automatically or as you set the timer.

When shipped from the factory, Auto Dimmer mode is activated.

Note:

Auto Dimmer supplied with this unit may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming. In this case, select any setting other than "Auto."

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: See pages 51.)



2 Press number button 3 to select "DISP"—Display category of the PSM settings.



3 Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ to select "Dimmer."



Dimmer	-
Auto	Ð
	COLOR

4 Set the dimmer mode to your preference.



- Auto: Activates Auto Dimmer. When you turn on the car head lights, the display automatically dims.
- Off: Cancels Auto Dimmer.
- On: Always dims the display.
- Time Set: Used to set the timer for the dimmer function.

Note:

Selecting "Auto" or "Time Set" may change the display pattern to the "Negative" or "Positive" pattern if "LCD Type" is set to "Auto."

- If you select "Time Set," go to the following steps to set the timer.
- If you select any setting other than "Time Set," go to step **7** to finish the setting.
- **5** Select "From–To" to set the timer for the dimmer mode.



6 Set the timer.

- 1 Turn the control dial to select the start time.
- 2 Press ►►I ▲ once.
- 3 Turn the control dial to select the end time.

7 Finish the setting.





Changing the display color

You can set the display color using the PSM control. You can select your favorite color for each source (or for all sources).

You can also create your own colors, and set them as the display color.

Setting the desired color for each source

Once you have set the color for each source (or for all sources), the display illuminates in the selected color when the source is selected.

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: See pages 51.)

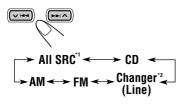


2 Press number button 6 to select "COLOR"—Color category of the PSM settings.

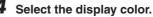


The "All SRC" setting screen appears on the display.

3 Select the source—All SRC, CD, Changer (Line), FM, or AM—that you want to set the display color for.



- *1 When you select "All SRC," the same color will be used for all sources.
- *2 Either component which is selected in the "Ext Input" setting appears.





As you turn the control dial, the colors change as follows:

Every*1 Z Aqua Z Sky Z Sea Z Leaves Z Grass Z Red Z Rose Z Amber Z Honey Z Violet Z Cotton Z Snow Z User*2 Z (back to the beginning)

- *1 When you select "Every," the color changes every 2 seconds (changing to every color listed above except "User").
- *2 When you select "User," the user-edited colors—"Day" and "Night" will be applied. (See page 56.)
- **5** Repeat steps **3** and **4** to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All SRC" in step **3**).
 - If you want to apply different colors to the different sources, select any source other than "All SRC" before finish the setting.
- 6 Finish the setting.





Creating your own color-User

You can create your own colors—"Day" and "Night," and select them as the display color for any desired source.

- Day: Can be used as your user color during the day time (while the headlights are turned off), or as set by the timer— "From – To."
- Night: Can be used as your user color during the night time (while the headlights are turned on), or as set by the timer— "From – To."
- Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: See pages 51.)



2 Press number button 6 to select "COLOR"—Color category of the PSM settings.



The source/color selecting screen appears on the display.

3 Select "User" as a color.



The user color will be applied to the currently selected source (the one shown on the upper portion of the display. In this example "All SRC").

To select which source to apply your user color to, select the target source first by pressing ▲ (up) or ▼ (down), before selecting "User" in this step.

4 Select the user color adjustment screen.



One of the user color adjustment screens appears.

"User Day" or "User Night" is shown on the left side of the display.



5 Select either "Day" or "Night" to make an adjustment for.



6 Adjust the selected user color.

 Press >> A or > I <= to select one of three primary colors—"R" (red), "G" (green), and "B" (blue).



 Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) to adjust the selected primary color.

You can adjust within the range of 00 to 11.

- 3) Repeat steps 1) and 2) to adjust the other primary colors.
- 7 Repeat steps 5 and 6 to adjust the other user colors—"Day" or "Night."

8 Finish the setting.





Assigning names to the sources

You can assign names to station frequencies, CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer), and the external component.

After assigning a name, it will appears on the display when you select the source.

Sources	Maximum number of characters
Station frequencies	Up to 10 characters (up to 30 station frequencies including both FM and AM)
CDs*	Up to 32 characters (up to 40 discs)
External component	Up to 8 characters

* You can assign a name only to conventional CDs.

Select a source you want to assign a name to.

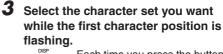
When you select a source, the power automatically comes on.

While pressing DISP (D), press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds.



CD /	Disc Name	
TRK- 15 00'00"		E
···· FLAT	ଆହ A>a>0	⊈ A→B ©

Ex.: When you select "DISC" as the source



Each time you press the button, the character set changes as follows:

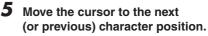
r→ A (A – Z: capital) → a (a – z: small) -0 (0 – 9: numbers. and symbols)

4 Select a character.

D



· About the available characters, see page 66.



6 Repeat steps 3 to 5 until you finish entering the name.



Finish the procedure while the last selected character is flashing.



To erase entered characters

Insert spaces using the same procedure described above.

Notes:

- When you try to assign a name to the 41st disc or to the 31st station frequency, "Name Full" appears and you cannot enter the text entry mode. In this case, delete unwanted names before assignment.
- When the CD changer is connected, you can assign names to CDs in the CD changer. These names can also be shown on the display if you insert the CDs in this unit.



Detaching the control panel

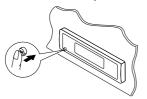
You can detach the control panel when leaving the car.

When detaching or attaching the control panel, be careful not to damage the connectors on the back of the control panel and on the panel holder.

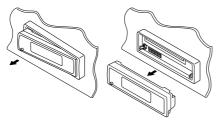
Detaching the control panel

Before detaching the control panel, be sure to turn off the power.

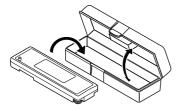
1 Unlock the control panel.



2 Pull the control panel out of the unit.

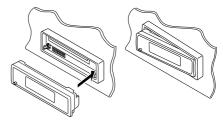


3 Put the detached control panel into the provided case.

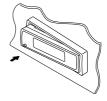


Attaching the control panel

Insert the right side of the control panel into the groove on the panel holder.



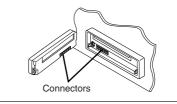
2 Press the left side of the control panel to fix it to the panel holder.



Note on cleaning the connectors:

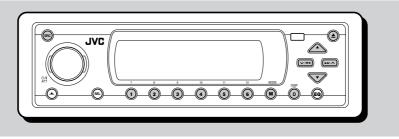
If you frequently detach the control panel, the connectors will deteriorate.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



CD CHANGER OPERATIONS





Operations of this section are explained using the buttons on the control panel unless mentioned otherwise.

We recommend that you use the JVC MP3compatible CD changer with your unit.

By using this CD changer, you can play back your original CD-Rs (Recordable) and CD-RWs (Rewritable) recorded either in audio CD format or in MP3 format.

- You can also connect other CH-X series CD changers (except CH-X99 and CH-X100). However, they are not compatible with MP3 discs, so you cannot play back MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.

Before operating your CD changer:

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- If no discs are in the magazine of the CD changer or the discs are inserted upside down, "No Disc" will flash on the display. If this happens, remove the magazine and position the discs correctly.
- If no magazine is loaded in the CD changer, "No Magazine" flashes on the display. If this happens, insert the magazine in the CD changer.
- If "Reset 1" "Reset 8" flashes on the display, something is wrong with the connection between this unit and the CD changer. If this happens, check the connection and make sure the cords are connected firmly. Then, press the reset button of the CD changer.

Note:

You cannot play back a DVD and a VCD on the CD changer.

Playing discs

Select the CD changer (CD-CH).



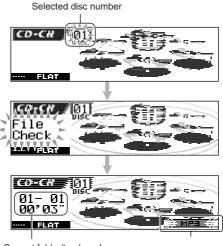
Each time you press the button, the source changes as described on page 8. When you select a source, the power automatically comes on.

Notes:

- You can also use the CH button on the remote controller.
- If you have changed the "Ext Input" setting to "Line In" (see page 53), you cannot select the CD changer.

When the current disc is an MP3 disc:

Playback starts from the first folder of the current disc once file check is completed.



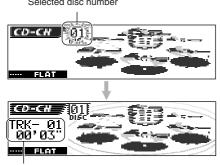
Current folder/track and elapsed playing time

MP3 indicator



 When the current disc is a CD: Playback starts from the first track of the current disc.

Selected disc number



Current track and elapsed playing time

Note:

If you change the source, CD changer play also stops. Next time you select the CD changer as the source, CD changer play starts from where playback has been stopped previously.

To change the display information

While playing back a disc, you can change the disc information shown on the display.

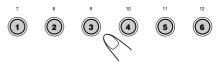


Press DISP (D) repeatedly. Each time you press the button, the display changes.

• For details, see pages 41 and 42.

To go to a particular disc directly

Press the number button corresponding to the disc number to start its playback (while the CD changer is playing).



- To select a disc number from 1 6: Press 1 (7) – 6 (12) briefly.
- To select a disc number from 7 12: Press and hold 1 (7) – 6 (12) for more than one second.

Note:

You can also use the DISC +/- buttons on the remote controller to select a disc.

To fast-forward or reverse the track



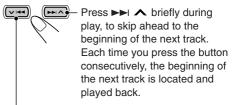
Press and hold \rightarrow , during play, to fast-forward the track.

Press and hold \checkmark I \triangleleft , during play, to reverse the track.

Note:

During this operation on an MP3 disc, you can only hear intermittent sounds. (The elapsed playing time also changes intermittently on the display.)

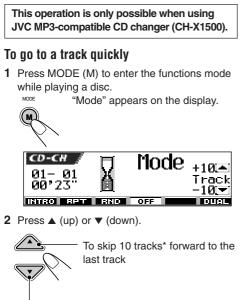
To go to the next or previous tracks



Press ✓ I d briefly during play, to skip back to the beginning of the current track.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the beginning of the previous track is located and played back.





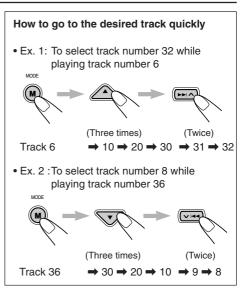
To skip 10 tracks* backward to the first track

* The first time you press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) button, the track skips to the nearest higher or lower track with a track number of an even multiple ten (ex. 10th, 20th, 30th).

Then each time you press the button, you can skip 10 tracks (see "How to go to the desired track quickly" on the right column).

Notes:

- After the last track, the first track will be selected, and vice versa.
- If the current playing disc is an MP3 disc, tracks are skipped within the same folder.



To skip to the next or previous folder (only for MP3 discs)

Press \blacktriangle (up) while playing an MP3 disc, to go to the next folder.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the next folder is located, and the first track in the folder starts playback.

Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ (down) while playing an MP3 disc, to go to the previous folder.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the previous folder is located, and the first track in the folder starts playback.

Note:

If the folder does not contain any MP3 tracks, it is skipped.



To select a disc using the disc lists

If you forget what discs are loaded in the CD changer, you can show the disc title list and select a disc in the list shown on the display.

- The display can show only six disc names at a time.
- While playing a disc, press and hold ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) until a disc name list appears on the display.



CD-CH DISC	01	∃ Rock M
Disc 01 Pop		🖲 ABC
	03	⊜No Disc

Selected disc number

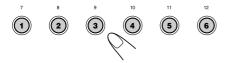
Note:

If a disc has a disc title (CD Text) or an assigned disc name, it will be shown on the display. However, if the disc has not been played before, its disc number will appear.

2 Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) to show the other disc name list, if necessary.



3 Select the number (1 – 6) for the disc you want to play.



While playing an MP3 disc, you can also show the folder list(s) and track list(s) on the display, then select a folder or track.

1 While playing an MP3 disc, press and hold ▲ (up) or

▼ (down) until a disc name list appears on the display.

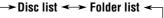


2 Press >> A or > I to

show a folder list of the current disc or track list of the current folder.



Each time you press the button, lists on the display changes as follows:



~	Track	liet	-
~	Hath	nət	-

Current folder number

со-сн	DISCO	🖲 Is-m
01- Folder	POPS	😉 Behex
····· ELAT	₿K-Shi	⊜ SLK

Ex.: When folder list is selected

Current track number



Ex.: When track list is selected

Note:

The display can show only six items at a time. You can show the other items on the next lists by pressing \blacktriangle (up) or \blacktriangledown (down).

3 Press the number button for the disc, folder, or track you want to play.





Selecting the playback modes

To play back tracks repeatedly (Repeat Play)

From the remote controller:



Press REPEAT (↔) repeatedly until the Repeat Play mode you want is selected.

On the control panel:

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode during play. "Mode" appears on the display.

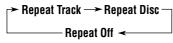


2 Press number button 2 repeatedly while "Mode" is still on the display. Each time you press the button, Repeat Play mode changes as follows:

For MP3 discs:

→ Repeat Track → Repeat Folder — Repeat Off ← Repeat Disc ←

For CDs:



Note:

MP3 indicator also lights up if the current playing disc is an MP3 disc.

Mode	Active indicator	Plays repeatedly
Repeat Track	и вет indicator lights up.	The current (or specified) track.
Repeat Folder*	Indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current (or specified) folder of the current disc.
Repeat Disc	indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current (or specified) disc.

* "Repeat Folder" is only applicable for MP3 disc.

To cancel Repeat Play, select "Repeat Off" by pressing number button 2 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.

To play back tracks at random (Random Play)

From the remote controller:



Press RANDOM (R) repeatedly until the Random Play mode you want is selected.

On the control panel:

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode during play. "Mode" appears on the display.





2 Press number button 3 repeatedly while "Mode" is still on the display. Each time you press the button, Random Play mode changes as follows:



For MP3 discs:

ightarrow Random Folder ightarrow Random Disc —

— Random Off \prec Random All 🗲

For CDs:



Note:

MP3 indicator also lights up if the current playing disc is an MP3 disc.

Mode	Active indicator	Plays at random
Random Folder*	Indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on.
Random Disc	END indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current (or specified) disc.
Random All	ALL RND indicator lights up.	All tracks of all discs inserted in the magazine.

* "Random Folder" is only applicable for MP3 disc.

To cancel Random Play, select "Random Off" by pressing number button 3 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.

To play back only intros (Intro Scan)

From the remote controller:



Press INTRO (I) repeatedly until the Intro Scan mode you want is selected.

On the control panel:

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode during play. "Mode" appears on the display.



2 Press number button 1 repeatedly while "Mode" is still on the display. Each time you press the button, Intro Scan mode changes as follows:

For MP3 discs:



Note:

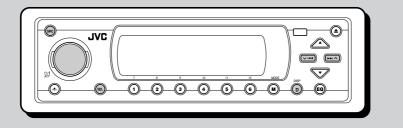
MP3 indicator also	lights ı	up if the	current	playing
disc is an MP3 disc.				

Mode	Active indicator	Plays the beginnings (15 seconds) of	
Intro Track	indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current disc.	
Intro Folder*	ы тыт indicator lights up.	The first track of every folder of the current disc.	
Intro Disc	indicator lights up.	The first tracks of the inserted discs.	

* "Intro Folder" is only applicable for MP3 disc.

To cancel Intro Scan, select "Intro Off" by pressing number button 1 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.

EXTERNAL COMPONENT OPERATIONS



Operations of this section are explained using the buttons on the control panel unless mentioned otherwise.

Playing an external component

You can connect the external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied).

Preparation:

For connecting the Line Input Adapter KS-U57 and the external component, refer to the Installation/ Connection Manual (separate volume).

Before operating the external component,

select the correct external input correctly by following the procedure below.

- See also "Changing the general settings (PSM)" on page 50.
- 1 Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display.
- 2 Press number button 5 to select "AUDIO"— Audio category of the PSM settings.
- 3 Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ to select "Ext Input"*.
- 4 Turn the control dial clockwise to select "Line In."
- 5 Press SEL (select) to finish the setting.
- For details, see "To select the external component to use—Ext Input" on page 53.
- * Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, and CD.

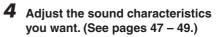
Select the external component (LINE IN).

Each time you press the button, the source changes as described on page 8. When you select a source, the power automatically comes on.



- * Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, and CD.
- **2** Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- **3** Adjust the volume.





Note:

You can also change the display pattern by pressing DISP (D) repeatedly.

Sound modes (preset frequency level settings)

The list below shows the preset frequency level settings for each sound mode.

• You can adjust the preset sound modes temporarily. However, your temporary adjustments will be reset when you select another sound mode.

Sound	Preset equalizing values						
Mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.4 kHz	6 kHz	12 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R & B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Рор	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance Music	+04	+02	00	-02	-01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User 1	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 2	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Available characters

You can use the following characters to assign names to stations, CDs, and external component. (See page 57.)

Capital letters

Α	В	С	D	Е
F	G	Н	I	J
К	L	М	Ν	0
Р	Q	R	S	Т
U	V	W	Х	Υ
Ζ	space			

Small letters

а	b	с	d	е
f	g	h	ï	j
k	I	m	n	0
р	q	r	s	t
u	v	w	х	У
z	space			

Numbers and symbols

			-	
0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	"	#	\$	%
&	,	()	*
+	,	-		/
:	;	<	=	>
?	@	_	`	space

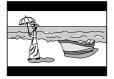
LANGUAGE CODES

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	KA	Georgian	SN	Shona
AB	Abkhazian	KK	Kazakh	so	Somali
AF	Afrikaans	KL	Greenlandic	SQ	Albanian
AM	Ameharic	KM	Cambodian	SR	Serbian
AR	Arabic	KN	Kannada	SS	Siswati
AS	Assamese	КО	Korean (KOR)	ST	Sesotho
AY	Aymara	KS	Kashmiri	SU	Sundanese
AZ	Azerbaijani	KU	Kurdish	sv	Swedish
BA	Bashkir	KY	Kirghiz	sw	Swahili
BE	Byelorussian	LA	Latin	ТА	Tamil
BG	Bulgarian	LN	Lingala	TE	Telugu
BH	Bihari	LO	Laothian	TG	Tajik
BI	Bislama	LT	Lithuanian	ТН	Thai
BN	Bengali, Bangla	LV	Latvian, Lettish	Т	Tigrinya
BO	Tibetan	MG	Malagasy	ТК	Turkmen
BR	Breton	MI	Maori	TL	Tagalog
CA	Catalan	MK	Macedonian	TN	Setswana
со	Corsican	ML	Malayalam	то	Tonga
CS	Czech	MN	Mongolian	TR	Turkish
CY	Welsh	МО	Moldavian	TS	Tsonga
DA	Danish	MR	Marathi	TT	Tatar
DZ	Bhutani	MS	Malay (MAY)	TW	Twi
EL	Greek	И МТ	Maltese	UK	Ukrainian
EO	Esperanto	MY	Burmese	UR	Urdu
ΞT	Estonian	NA	Nauru	UZ	Uzbek
EU	Basque	NE	Nepali	VI	Vietnamese
FA	Persian	NL	Dutch	VO	Volapuk
FI	Finnish	NO	Norwegian	wo	Wolof
FJ	Fiji	oc	Occitan	XH	Xhosa
FO	Faroese	OM	(Afan) Oromo	YO	Yoruba
FY	Frisian	OR	Oriya	ZU	Zulu
GA	Irish	PA	Panjabi	20	Zulu
GD	Scots Gaelic	PL	Polish		
GL	Galician	PS	Pashto, Pushto		
GN	Guarani	PT	Portuguese		
GU	Gujarati	QU	Quechua		
HA	Hausa	RM	Rhaeto-Romance		
HI	Hindi	RN	Kirundi		
HR	Croatian	RO	Rumanian		
HU	Hungarian	RU	Russian		
HY	Armenian	RW	Kinyarwanda		
IA	Interlingua	SA	Sanskrit		
IE	Interlingue	SD	Sindhi		
IK	Inupiak	SG	Sindhi Sangho		
IN	Indonesian	SH	Sangno Serbo-Croatian		
IS	Icelandic	SI SI			
IW	Hebrew	SK	Singhalese Slovak		
JI	Yiddish	SL	Slovak Slovenian		
JW	Javanese				
0 0 0	Javanese	SM	Samoan		

GLOSSARY

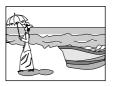
4:3 Letterbox Screen

This is one method for displaying a wide screen picture on a conventional sized (4:3) TV. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen.



4:3 Pan-Scan Screen

This is one method for displaying a wide screen picture on a conventional sized (4:3) TV. While viewing a wide screen picture, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen.



Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a technology developed by Dolby Laboratories that reproduces multi-channel cinema sound in systems equipped with a Dolby Digital multi-channel processor or amplifier. Dolby Digital can deliver from mono up to 5.1 discrete channels of excellent sound quality.

The KD-DV5000 automatically recognizes the Dolby Digital bitstream and provides a downmix suitable for two-channel listening. An additional Dolby Digital decoder or amplifier is required to reproduce the discrete multi-channel sound encoded in many DVDs.

DTS Digital Surround

This is another discrete 5.1 channel digital audio format, available on CD, LD, and DVD software, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc. Compared to Dolby Digital, the audio compression rate is relatively low. This fact allows DTS Digital Surround format to add breadth and depth to the reproduced sounds. As a result, DTS Digital Surround features natural, solid and clear sound.

To reproduce these surround signals, you need to connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with DTS Digital Surround.

ID3 Tag (MP3)

An MP3 file can contain file information called "ID3 Tag" where its album name, performer, track title, etc. are recorded.

There are two versions–ID3v1 (ID3 Tag version 1) and ID3v2 (ID3 Tag version 2). Only ID3v1 can be shown.

Linear PCM

This is a digital recording format that is used for audio CDs.

Playback Control (VCD)

When a VCD has the PBC (Playback Control) function, you can use menu-driven operations and enjoy high-resolution still pictures.

Sampling Frequency, Quantization Bits

When analog signals are converted into digital signals, they are divided into many points and digitized. This dividing method is called "sampling." The sampling frequency indicates how many points one second is divided into – for example, for CD sound, one second is divided into 44100 points since its sampling frequency is 44.1 kHz. On the other hand, the number of quantization bits indicates the volume size used to memorize each divided point.

The larger this number is, the clearer the sound can be reproduced.

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Causes	Remedies
	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	The volume level is set to the minimum level.	Adjust it to the optimum level.
		Connections are incorrect.	Check the cords and connections.
General	This unit does not work at all.	The built-in microcomputer may have functioned incorrectly due to noise, etc.	Press the reset button on the panel holder after detaching the control panel. (The clock setting and preset stations stored in memory are erased.) (See page 2.)
	 "Panel Connect Error" appears on the display. 	The control panel is not attach correctly and firmly.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connectors, then attach it again. (See page 58.)
	 No sound comes out of the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug. 	Dual Zone is not activated	Activate Dual Zone.
W	 SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory) automatic preset does not work. 	Signals are too weak.	Store stations manually.
FM/AM	 Static noise while listening to the radio. 	The antenna is not connected firmly.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	AM band cannot be selected.	Dual Zone is activated.	Deactivate Dual Zone.
	 Disc cannot be played back. 	Disc is inserted upside down.	Insert the disc correctly.
ick	CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. Tracks on the CD-R/ CD-RW cannot be skipped.	CD-R/CD-RW is not finalized.	 Insert a finalized CD-R/ CD-RW. Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
Disc Playback	Disc cannot be ejected.	Disc is locked.	Unlock the disc. (See page 41.)
Disc	 [00'00"] appears on the display, but playback does not start. 	You are playing a Mixed-CD. (Playback stops at the beginning of the first track.)	Skip to the following tracks. Playback start with the selected track. (For details about the Mixed-CD, refer to "A Guide to MP3" (separate volume).
	Disc cannot be recognized.	The CD player may function incorrectly.	While holding SRC, press SEL for more than 2 seconds to eject the disc.



	Symptoms	Causes	Remedies
	• Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	You are driving on rough roads.	Stop playback while driving on rough roads.
	distoried.	Disc is scratched.	Change the disc.
		Connections are incorrect.	Check the cords and connections.
	 "No Disc" flashes on the display. 	No disc in the loading slot.	Insert a disc into the loading slot.
		Disc is inserted incorrectly.	Insert the disc correctly.
	No playback picture (DVD, VCD) appears on the monitor.	Parking brake wire is not connected.	Connect the wire (see Installation/Connection Manual).
	No picture appears on the monitor at all.	The video cord is not connected correctly.	Connect the video cord correctly
		An incorrect input has been selected on the TV or monitor.	Select a correct input on the TV or monitor.
Disc Playback	• The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the screen.	"4:3 PS" is selected when viewing on a conventional TV (aspect ratio 4:3).	Select "4:3 LB." (See page 45.)
Disc F	Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	The built-in microcomputer may function incorrectly due to noise, etc.	Turn off the power, then turn it on again.
	 MP3 disc is skipped or cannot be played back. 	MP3 files do not have the extension code—mp3 in their file names.	Add the extension code —mp3 to their file names.
		MP3 files are not recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet.	Change the disc. (Record MP3 files using a compliant application.)
	 Noise is generated while playing an MP3 disc. 	The file played back is not an MP3 file (although it has the extension code—mp3).	Skip to another file or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code—mp3 to non- MP3 files.)
	 MP3 files cannot be played back in the order you have intended them to play. 	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.	
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct for an MP3 disc.	This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the files are recorded on the disc.	

Symptoms	Causes	Remedies	
"No Disc" flashes on the	No disc is in the magazine.	Insert discs into the magazine.	
display.	Discs are inserted upside down.	Insert discs correctly.	
	Discs are unplayable.	Insert playable discs.	
	The current disc does not contain any MP3 files.	Insert a disc that contains MP3 files.	
 "No Magazine" flashes on the display. 	No magazine is loaded in the CD changer.	Insert the magazine.	er
"Reset 8" flashes on the display.	This unit is not connected to the CD changer correctly.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button on the CD changer.	CD Changer
• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" flashes on the display.		Press the reset button on the CD changer.	
The CD changer does not work at all.	The built-in microcomputer may function incorrectly due to noise, etc.	Press the reset button on the panel holder after detaching the control panel. (The clock setting and preset stations stored in memory are erased.) (See page 2.)	

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

They differ depending on the "DIGITAL AUDIO OUT" setting on the Setup Menu.

DIGITAL AUDIO OUT			Output Signals			
Playback Disc		PCM ONLY	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	STREAM/PCM		
DVD 48 kHz, 16/20/24 bit Linear PCM		48 kHz, 16 bit Linear PCM *				
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	None				
	with Dolby Digital	48 kHz, 16 bit Linear PCM Dolby Digital bitst		bitstream		
	with DTS	48 kHz, 16 bi	t Linear PCM	DTS bitstream		
	with MPEG Multichannel	48 kHz, 16 bi	t Linear PCM	MPEG bitstream		
Vide	o CD, Audio CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bit Linear PCM				
Audio	o CD with DTS	44.1 kHz, 16 bit Linear PCM DTS bitstream		DTS bitstream		
MP3		Linear PCM				

* While playing some DVDs, digital signals may be emitted at 20 bits or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.

? MAINTENANCE

Handling discs

This unit has been designed to reproduce DVD-Videos, VCDs, CDs, CD-Rs (Recordable), CD-RWs (Rewritable), and CD Texts.

This unit is also compatible with MP3 discs.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc

from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.



Center holder

• Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

• Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc. To remove these rough spots, rub



the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car. Should this occur, the CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

When playing a CD-R or CD-RW

Before playing back CD-Rs or CD-RWs, read their instructions or cautions carefully.

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, and for the following reasons:
 - Discs are dirty or scratched.
 - Moisture condensation on the lens inside the unit.
 - The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- CD-Rs or CD-RWs are susceptible to high temperatures or high humidity, so do not leave them inside your car.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
 - Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
 - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to discs. For example,

- Stickers or labels may shrink and warp a disc.
- Stickers or labels may peel off so discs cannot be ejected.
- Print on discs may get sticky.

Read instructions or cautions about labels and printable discs carefully.

CAUTIONS:

- Do not insert any disc of unusual shape—like a heart or flower; otherwise, it will cause a malfunction.
- Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or any heat source or place them in a place subject to high temperature and humidity. Do not leave them in a car.
- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.







Sticker residue



SPECIFICATIONS

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output: Front: 50 W per channel Rear: 50 W per channel Continuous Power Output (RMS): Front: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion. Rear: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion. Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance) Equalizer Control Range: Frequencies: 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.4 kHz, 6 kHz, 12 kHz Level: ±10 dB Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB Audio output level: Analog (2nd AUDIO OUT): 6 mW (at 16 Ω) Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical): Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm Line-Out Level/Impedance: 2.0 V/20 k Ω load (full scale) Output Impedance: 1 kΩ Color system: PAL/NTSC Video output (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range: FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz AM: 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω) 50 dB Quieting Sensitivity: 16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω) Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz Stereo Separation: 35 dB Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[AM Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 µV Selectivity: 35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser) Number of channels: 2 channels (stereo) Frequency Response: DVD, fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz DVD, fs=96 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz VCD, CD, MP3: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz Dynamic Range: 96 dB Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 98 dB Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit MP3 recording format: MPEG 1/2 Audio Layer 3 Max. Bit rate: 320 Kbps

GENERAL

Power Requirement: Operating Voltage: DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance) Grounding System: Negative ground Allowable Operating Temperature: 0° C to +40°C Dimensions (W × H × D): Installation Size (approx.): 182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm Panel Size (approx.): 188 mm × 58 mm × 12 mm Mass (approx.): 1.7 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

About mistracking:

Mistracking may result from driving on extremely rough roads. This does not damage the unit and the disc, but will be annoying. We recommend that you stop disc play while driving on such rough roads.

Having TROUBLE with operation? Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit



© 2003 VICTOR COMPANY OF JAPAN, LIMITED



0503MNMMDWJEIN

JVC KD-DV5000 Installation/Connection Manual



ΕN

LVT1055-004A [A]

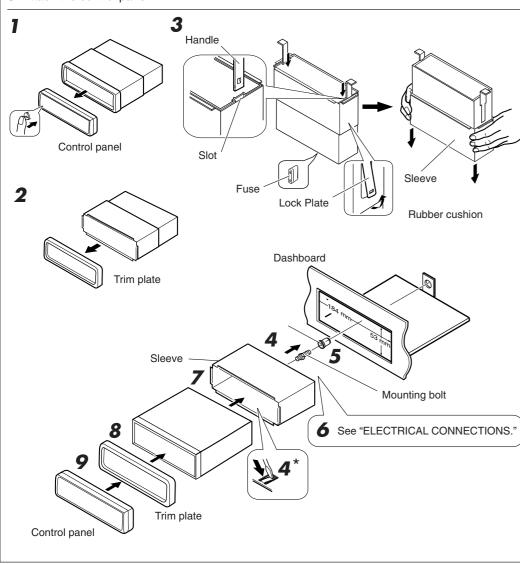
This unit is designed to operate on 12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems.

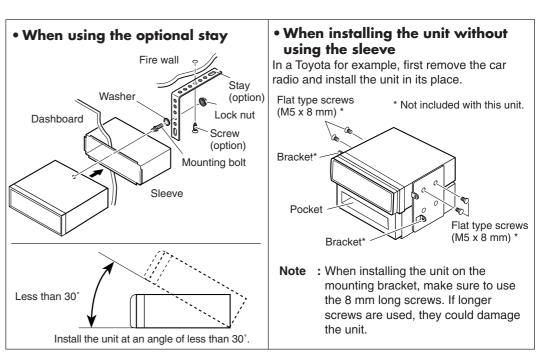
WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit in locations where;
- it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
- it may obstruct visibility.
- · DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
- If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident. . The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside
- sounds while driving. . If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be
- involved in a traffic accident. • If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE
- DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
- This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

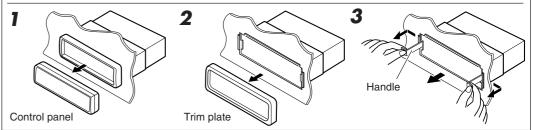
- The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.
- 1 Before mounting: Press 🛋 (control panel release button) to detach the control panel if already attached.
 - * When shipped from the factory, the control panel is packed in the hard case.
- 2 Remove the trim plate.
- 3 Remove the sleeve after disengaging the sleeve locks.
- 1) Stand the unit.
- Note: When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear.
- 2 Insert the 2 handles between the unit and the sleeve, as illustrated, to disengage the sleeve locks.
- ③ Remove the sleeve.
 - Note: Be sure to keep the handles for future use after installing the unit.
- 4 Install the sleeve into the dashboard.
- After the sleeve is correctly installed into the dashboard, bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place, as illustrated.
- ${f 5}$ Fix the mounting bolt to the rear of the unit's body and place the rubber cushion over the end of the bolt.
- **6** Do the required electrical connections.
- 7 Slide the unit into the sleeve until it is locked.
- 8 Attach the trim plate.
- 9 Attach the control panel.

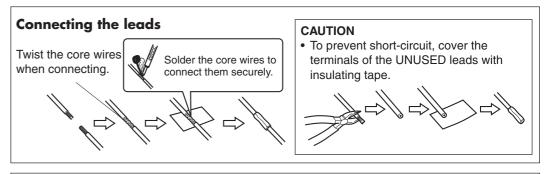




Removing the unit

- · Before removing the unit, release the rear section.
- **1** Remove the control panel.
- 2 Remove the trim plate.
- 3 Insert the 2 handles into the slots, as shown. Then, while gently pulling the handles away from each other, slide out the unit. (Be sure to keep the handles after installing it.)





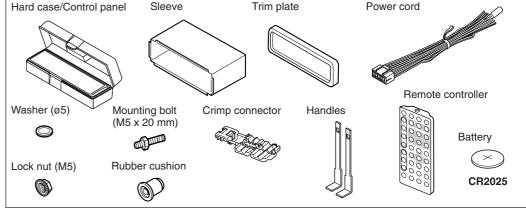
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections: Fig. 1

- DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.
- · Connect the black lead (ground), yellow lead (to car battery, constant 12 V), and red lead (to an accessory terminal) correctly.
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.
- If the speaker wiring in your car is as illustrated in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 below, DO NOT connect the unit using that original speaker wiring. If you do, the unit will be seriously damaged. Redo the speaker wiring so that you can connect the unit to the speakers as illustrated in Fig. 3.
- If the speaker wiring in your car is as illustrated in Fig. 3, you can connect the unit using the original speaker wiring in your car.
- If you are not sure of the speaker wiring of your car, consult your car dealer.

Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided with this unit. After checking them, please set them correctly. Trim plate

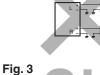
Hard case/Control panel Sleeve



Power cord







TROUBLESHOOTING

• The fuse blows.

* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- Power cannot be turned on.
- * Is the yellow lead connected?
- · No sound from the speakers.

* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- · Sound is distorted.
- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- Unit becomes hot.
- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "--" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit. If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Note:

This unit is designed to operate only on 12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- If noise is a problem...

This unit incorporates a noise filter in the power circuit. However, with some vehicles, clicking or other unwanted noise may occur. If this happens, connect the unit's rear ground terminal (see connection diagram) to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords, such as copper braiding or gauge wire. If noise still persists, consult your JVC car audio dealer.

- · Maximum input of the speakers should be more than 50 W at
- the rear and 50 W at the front, with an impedance of 4 Ω to 8 Ω . Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis.
- . The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit. Heat sink

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT/2nd AUDIOOUT): 2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO-
- ANALOG DOWN MIX: see page 46 of the Instructions)
- Through DIGITAL OUT (optical): Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*, DTS**, MPEG Multichannel) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 71 of the Instructions.) To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" to the correct value. (See page 46 of the Instructions)
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories
- "DTS" and "DTS Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

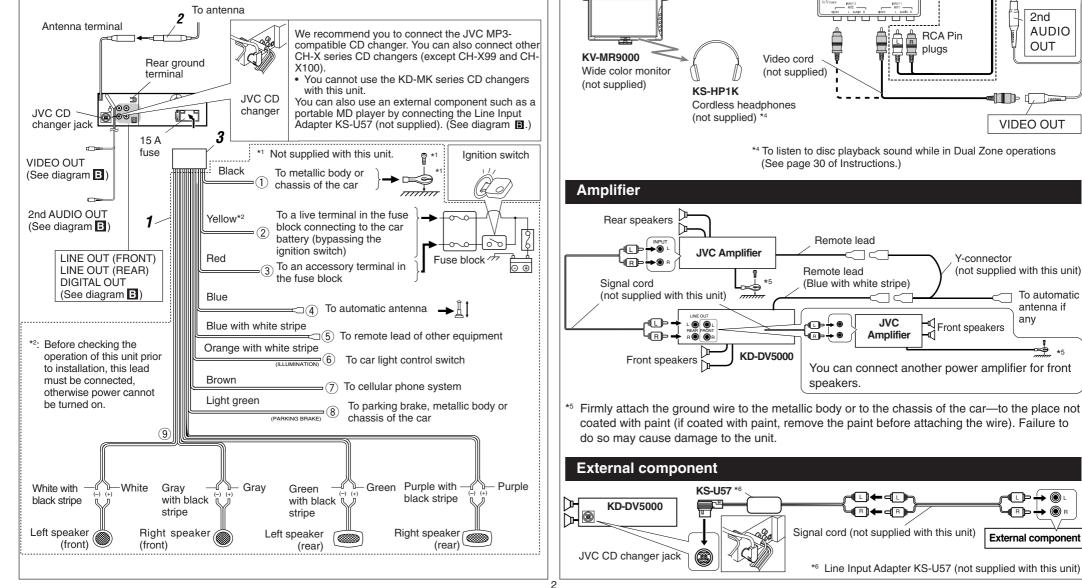
A Typical Connections

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully not to fail in connecting this unit. Incorrect connection may cause a serious damage to this unit.

The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

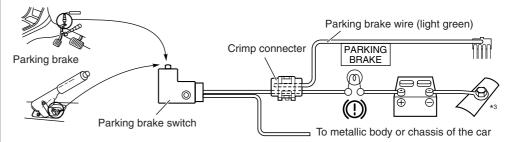
- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord to the car battery, speakers and automatic antenna (if any) in the following sequence.
 - 1 Black: ground
 - 2 Yellow: to car battery (constant 12 V)
 - ③ Red: to an accessory terminal
 - ④ Blue: to automatic antenna if any (250 mA max.)
 - 5 Blue with white stripe: to remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.)
 - 6 Light green: To parking brake, metallic body or chassis of the car
 - ⑦ Orange with white stripe: to car light control switch
 - ⑧ Brown: To cellular phone system (For details, refer to the instructions of the celluar phone.)
 - (9) Others: to speakers
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Before connecting the CD changer, make sure that the unit is turned off.



Connecting the parking brake wire

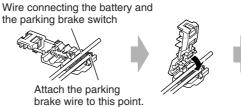
When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.



When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.



How to connect the crimp connector







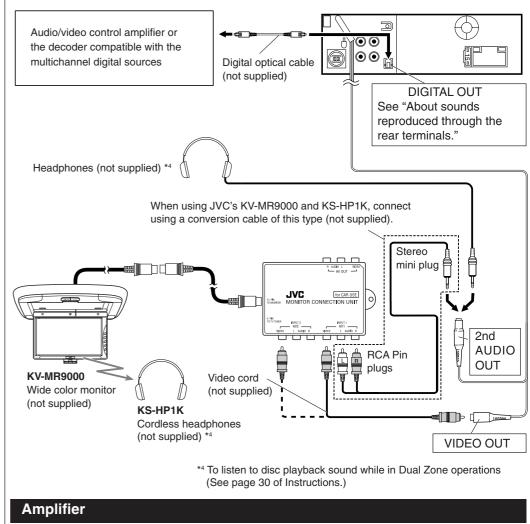
Contact the metallic part of the crimp connecter to the wires inside

connecter firmly

B Connections Adding Other Equipment

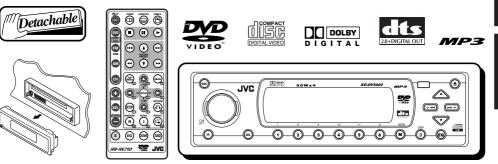
- You can connect an amplifier and other equipment to upgrade your car stereo system.
- · Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- For amplifier:
- Connect this unit's line-out terminals to the amplifier's line-in terminals.
- Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.

Required connections for DVD playback



JVC

DVD/CD RECEIVER 收音組合機 DVD/CD DVD/CD 수신기 เครื่องเลน DVD/CD KD-DV5000



This unit is equipped with the display demonstration. To cancel it, see page 9. 對本機具有顯示演示功能。要取消該功能,請參閱第9頁。 이 장치에는 디스플레이 데모 기능이 있습니다. 기능을 취소하려면9페이지를 참조하십시오. เครื่องนี้ได้รับการติดตั้งการสาธิตภาพประกอบ หากต้องการยกเลิก โปรดดู หน้า 9

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual. 有關安裝和連接方法,分別參閱操作手冊。 설치 및 연결을 하실 때에는 별도의 장착 메뉴얼을 참조하여 주십시오. กรุณาอุกูมือที่แยกตางหาก ในการติดตั้งและการเชื่อมตอ

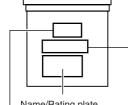
INSTRUCTIONS 使用說明書 사용설명서 กำแนะนำ

LVT1055-001A [U]

中 文

Position And Reproduction Of Labels

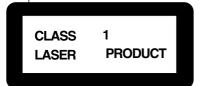
Bottom panel of the main unit



TO BEAM. (e)	telse for stråling. (d)	strålen. (s)	Alä katso säteeseen. (f)
	radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE	radiation when open and stråling ved åbning, når interlock failedor defeated. sikkerhedsafbrydere er ude AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE af funktion. Undgåudsæt-	CAUTION: Invisible laser radiation when open and sträling ved äbning, när denna del är interlock failedor defeated, sikkerhedsafbrydere er ude VOIDDIRECT EXPOSURE af funktion. Undgåudsæt urkopplad. Betrakta ej TO BEAM. (e) telse for stråling. (d)

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

Name/Rating plate



Caution:

This product contains a laser component of higher laser class than Class 1.

Precautions:

- 1.CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
- 2. CAUTION: Invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
- 3.CAUTION: Do not open the top cover. There are no user-serviceable parts inside. Leave all servicing to gualified service personnel.
- 4. CAUTION: This DVD/CD player uses invisible laser radiation and is equipped with safety switches to prevent radiation emission when unloading discs. It is dangerous to defeat the safety switches.
- 5. CAUTION: Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

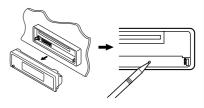
How to reset your unit

After detaching the control panel, press the reset button on the panel holder using a ball-point pen or similar tool. This will reset the built-in microcomputer.

NOTE:

If you reset the unit during play, the playback mode selections (e.g. repeat play mode setting), you have selected for the current disc will be reset to the initial settings.

• During DVD playback, the disc menu selection will also be reset to the initial disc settings.



Thank you for purchasing a JVC product. Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.

- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

CAUTION: DO NOT insert a disc while the disc loading lamp is flashing or is not lit. (See page 18.)

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing use only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

CAUTION on Volume Setting:

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. If the volume level is adjusted for the tuner, for example, the speakers may be damaged by the sudden increase in the output level. Therefore, lower the volume before playing a disc and adjust it as required during playback.

Caution:

If the temperature inside the car is below 0°C, the movement of animation and text scroll will be halted on the display to prevent the display from being blurred. (LOW TEMP.) indicator appears on the display.

When the temperature increases, and the operating temperature is resumed, these functions will start working again.

BEFORE USE

- * For safety
- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.
- * Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

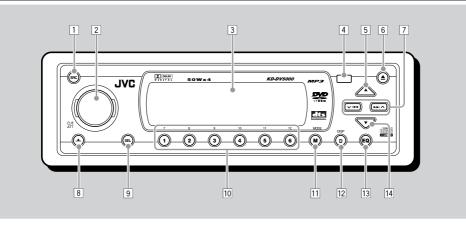
ENGLISH

How to reset your unit	2
LOCATION OF THE BUTTONS Control panel Remote controller Preparing the remote controller	5 6 7
BASIC OPERATIONS	8 9 9 10
RADIO OPERATIONS	11 13 14 15
PLAYABLE DISCS	16
BASIC DISC PLAYBACK	18 18 20 21
DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS Selecting subtitles	22 22 23
Selecting subtitles Selecting audio languages Selecting multi-angle views Menu operations	22 23 23 24
Selecting subtitles Selecting audio languages Selecting multi-angle views Menu operations Zoom in	22 23 23 24 25
Selecting subtitles	22 23 23 24 25 26 26
Selecting subtitles Selecting audio languages Selecting multi-angle views Menu operations Zoom in ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS Searching for a particular point Playing in various play modes DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS	22 23 24 25 26 26 28 30

DVD SETUP MENU	43
Basic setting procedure	43
SOUND ADJUSTMENTS	47
Adjusting the sound Selecting preset sound modes	47
(iEQ: intelligent equalizer) Storing your own sound adjustments	48 49
OTHER MAIN FUNCTIONS	50
Changing the general settings (PSM)	50
Selecting the dimmer mode	54
Changing the display color Assigning names to the sources	55 57
Detaching the control panel	58
CD CHANGER OPERATIONS	59
Playing discs	59
Selecting the playback modes	63
EXTERNAL COMPONENT OPERATIONS	65
Playing an external component	65
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	66
LANGUAGE CODES	67
GLOSSARY	68
TROUBLESHOOTING	69
MAINTENANCE	72
Handling discs	72
SPECIFICATIONS	73

LOCATION OF THE BUTTONS

Control panel



Refer to the pages in parentheses for details.

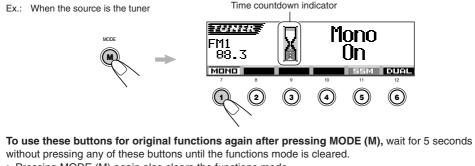
- 1 SRC (source) button (8, 57, 59, 65)
- 2 ひ/I ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button (8)
 - Control dial
- 3 Display window
- 4 Remote sensor
- 5 ▲ (up) button
 - Functions as the Play button for DVDs and VCDs.

- 6 ▲ (eject) button (20, 35)
- 7 ✓ I◄◄/►►I ▲ buttons
- 8 (control panel release) button (58)
- 9 SEL (select) button
- 10 Number buttons
- 11 MODE (M) button
- 12 DISP (D) (display) button (10, 15, 41, 60, 65)
- 13 EQ (equalizer) button (10, 48)
- 14 ▼ (down) button
 - Functions as the Stop button for DVDs and VCDs.

How to use the MODE (M) button

If you press MODE (M), the unit goes into functions mode. While in functions mode, the number buttons work as different function buttons.

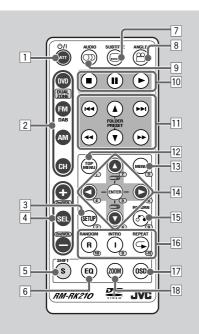
The ▲/▼ buttons also work as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE (M).



• Pressing MODE (M) again also clears the functions mode.



Remote controller



IMPORTANT:

If "Dual Zone" is turned on (see page 30), the remote controller only functions for operating the DVD/CD player.

Refer to the pages in parentheses for details.

- 1 **ウ/I** ATT (standby/on/attenuator) button
- 2 Source selection button
 - DVD, FM, AM, and CH
 - DVD button also functions as the DUAL ZONE button while pressed with SHIFT (S) button. (30)
 - FM button also functions to change the FM bands. Each time you press the button, FM band changes to FM1, FM2, and FM3 in sequence.
 - FM button does not function as the DAB button for this model.
 - CH button does not function if no CD changer is connected.

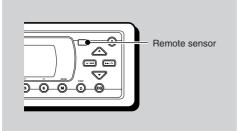
- 3*SETUP button (43)
- Basic sound setting buttons SEL, +, and –
 - The +/- buttons normally function as the volume adjustment buttons.
 - The +/- buttons also function as the 2ndVOL +/- buttons when pressed with SHIFT (S) button. (31)
- 5 SHIFT (S) button
- 6 EQ (equalizer) button (48)
 - This button does not work for selecting the level meter.
- 7 SUBTITLE 😡 button (22)
- 🔋 ANGLE 🛱 button (23)
- 9 AUDIO D button (23)
- 10 Disc basic operation buttons (20)
 - (stop), II (pause), ► (play)
- 11 Disc advanced operation buttons I ◄◄ / ►►I (reverse search/forward search)
 - The I i buttons also work for searching for stations.
 - (reverse/fast forward)
 - These buttons do not work for CD changer operations.
 - FOLDER PRESET ▲ / ▼
 - The FOLDER PRESET ▲ / ▼ buttons also work for selecting the preset stations.
- 12*TOP MENU button (24)
- 13*MENU button (24)
- 14*Menu operation buttons Cursor (▲ / ▼ / ◀ / ►), and ENTER
- 15*RETURN button (24)
- 16^{*} Play mode buttons (28, 29, 63, 64) RANDOM (R), INTRO (I), and REPEAT (♀)
- 17 OSD button (32)
- 18 ZOOM button (25)
- * These buttons function as the number buttons when pressed with SHIFT (S) button.



Preparing the remote controller

Before using the remote controller:

• Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the main unit. Make sure there is no obstacle in between.



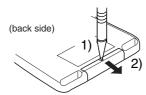
 Do not expose the remote sensor to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Installing the battery

When the controllable range or effectiveness of the remote controller decreases, replace the battery.

1. Remove the battery holder.

- 1) Push out the battery holder in the direction indicated by the arrow using a ball-point pen or a similar tool.
- 2) Remove the battery holder.



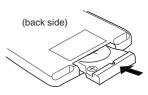
2. Place the battery.

Slide the battery into the holder with the + side facing upwards so that the battery is fixed in the holder.



 Lithium coin battery (product number: CR2025) 3. Return the battery holder.

Insert again the battery holder pushing it until you hear a clicking sound.



WARNING:

• Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.

If a child accidentally swallows the battery, consult a doctor immediately.

- Do not recharge, short, disassemble or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire. Doing any of these things may cause the battery to give off heat, crack or start a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.

Doing this may cause the battery to give off heat, crack or start a fire.

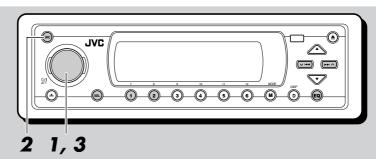
- When throwing away or saving the battery, wrap it in tape and insulate; otherwise, the battery may start to give off heat, crack or start a fire.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.

Doing this may cause the battery to give off heat, crack or start a fire.

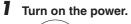
CAUTION:

DO NOT leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time. Otherwise, it may be damaged.





Turning on the power





Note on One-Touch Operation:

When you select a source in step **2** below, the power automatically comes on. You do not have to press this button to turn on the power.

2 Select the source.

Each time you press the button, the source changes as follows.

→ TUNER → DISC → CD-CH or LINE IN -(CD changer)

- To operate the tuner (FM or AM), see pages 11 15.
- To play a disc,

see pages 16 - 46.

To operate the CD changer,

see pages 59 – 64.

- To operate the external component (LINE IN), see page 65.
- *1 If a disc is not in the loading slot, you cannot select "DISC" as the source to play.
- *2 Without connecting a CD changer, you cannot select it as the source to play.
- *³ To select "LINE IN," select "Line In" for the "Ext Input" setting on page 53.

3 Adjust the volume.

Current sound (iEQ) mode (see page 48)

4 Adjust the sound as you want. (See pages 47 – 49.)

Note:

While playing a source, you can also show the level meter on the display. For details, see "Activating the level meter" on page 10.

To drop the volume in a moment

Press **b**/I ATT briefly while listening to any source. "ATT" starts flashing on the display, and the volume level will drop in a moment. To resume the previous volume level, press the button briefly again.

• If you turn the control dial, you can also restore the sound.

To turn off the power

Press **U**/I ATT for more than 1 second.

• If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, playback will start from where playback has been stopped previously, next time you turn on the power.

Canceling the display demonstration

When shipped from the factory, display demonstration has been activated, and starts automatically when no operations are done for about 20 seconds.

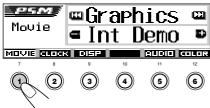
• It is recommended to cancel the demonstration before you use the unit for the first time.

To cancel the display demonstration, follow the procedure below:

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: see page 51.)



2 Press number button 1 to select "MOVIE"—Movie category of the PSM settings.



The "Graphics" setting screen appears on the display.

3 Select "Off."



4 Finish the setting.



To activate the display demonstration, repeat the same procedure and select "All Demo" or "Int Demo" in step **3**.

• For more details, see "To set the movie demonstration—Graphics" on page 52.

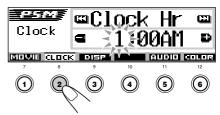
Setting the clock

You can also set the clock system to 24 hours or 12 hours.

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: see page 51.)



2 Press number button 2 to select "CLOCK"—Clock category of the PSM settings.



The "Clock Hr" setting screen appears on the display.

3 Adjust the hour.



Set the minute.

- 1 Select "Clock Min (minute)."
- 2 Adjust the minute.



ENGLISH

CONTINUED ON THE NEXT PAGE



Set the clock system.

1 Select "24H/12H."

2 Adjust "24Hours" or "12Hours."

2







To check the current clock time when the unit is turned off, press DISP (D).

The power turns on and the clock time is shown for about 5 seconds, then the power turns off.

Activating the level meter

You can show the level meters on the display while playing any source. This unit is equipped with three level meter patterns.

• There is a time limit in doing the following procedure. If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 1 again.

1

Press EQ (equalizer) twice.

Last selected level meter appears on the display.

 If you press the button only once, the sound selection screen appears (see page 48).

2 Select the level meter pattern you want.

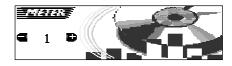


As you turn the control dial, the level meters change as follows:

 $\rightarrow \text{Off} \leftrightarrow 1 \leftarrow 1 \leftarrow 3 \leftrightarrow 2 \leftarrow 1$

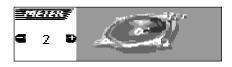
Meter 1:

The audio level meter fluctuates vertically.



Meter 2:

The speaker on the display vibrates as input audio level changes.



Meter 3:

The left and right audio level meters appear.

• If the display pattern is changed, only one audio level meter will be shown.



Off:

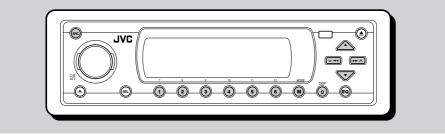
No level meter is shown. The source animation appears.

NOTICE:

The illustrations of the display used in this manual are mainly of the initial setting when shipped from the factory. If you have changed the display patterns or some PSM items, the actual displays you see will be different.

RADIO OPERATIONS





The operations of this section are mainly explained using the buttons on the control panel. When the remote controller can be used for the same operations, it is then explained.

Listening to the radio

You can use either automatic searching or manual searching to tune in to a particular station.

<u>Searching for a station automatically:</u> <u>Auto search</u>

This operation is also possible from the remote controller.

Select the band (FM1 – 3, AM).



- 1 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.
- Press and hold SRC.
 Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

→ FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM·

Selected band appears.

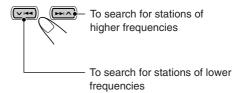


Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

Note:

This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

2 Start searching for a station.



When a station comes in, searching stops.

To stop searching before a station is received,

press the same button you have pressed for searching.

When using the remote controller

- 1 Press FM or AM.
 - When selecting the FM bands, press FM repeatedly until the band you want is selected.
- 2 Press ►►I or I to start searching.







Select the band (FM1 – 3, AM).



1 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.

 Press and hold SRC.
 Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

 \rightarrow FM1 \rightarrow FM2 \rightarrow FM3 \rightarrow AM -

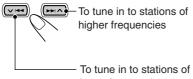
Note:

This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

2 Press and hold ►► A or ▼ Idd until "Manual Search" starts flashing on the display.



3 Tune in to a station you want while "Manual Search" is flashing.



lower frequencies

- If you release your finger from the button, the manual mode automatically turns off after 5 seconds.
- If you hold down the button, the frequency keeps changing (in 50 kHz intervals for FM and 9 kHz for AM) until you release the button.

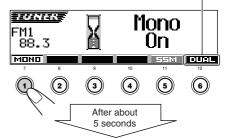
When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive:

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode while listening to an FM stereo broadcast. "Mode" appears on the display.



 Press number button 1 to select "Mono On" while "Mode" is still on the display. Each time you press the button, "Mono On" and "Mono Off" appears alternately.

See page 30 for this function.



The display returns to the source indication screen.



When "Mono On" is selected, the MONO indicator appears, and the sound you hear becomes monaural but the reception will be improved.



Storing stations in memory

You can use one of the following two methods to store broadcasting stations in memory.

- Automatic preset of FM stations: SSM (Strongstation Sequential Memory)
- Manual preset of both FM and AM stations

FM station automatic preset: SSM

You can preset 6 local FM stations in each FM band (FM1, FM2, and FM3).

Select the FM band (FM1 – 3) you want to store FM stations into.



 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.

 Press and hold SRC.
 Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

≻FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM-

Note:

This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

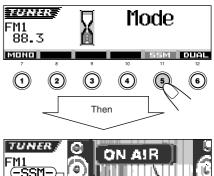
2 Start automatic preset.

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode.

"MODE "Mode" appears on the display.



 Press and hold number button 5 while "Mode" is still on the display.



"-SSM-" appears, then disappears when automatic preset is over.

Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the band number you have selected (FM1, FM2, or FM3). These stations are preset in the number buttons —No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.6 (highest frequency).

Manual preset

You can preset up to 6 stations in each band (FM1, FM2, FM3, and AM) manually.

- Ex.: Storing an FM station of 92.5 MHz into the preset number 1 of the FM1 band.
 - Select the band (FM1 3, AM) you want to store stations into (in this example, FM1).

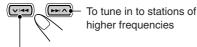


- 1 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.
- Press and hold SRC.
 Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

ightarrow FM1 ightarrow FM2 ightarrow FM3 ightarrow AM-



Tune in to a station (in this example, of 92.5 MHz).



To tune in to stations of lower frequencies



3 Press and hold the number button (in this example, 1) for more than 2 seconds.



The display pattern automatically changes like the above pattern (see page 15). The preset number flashes for about 5 seconds, then the previous display pattern resumes.

4 Repeat the above procedure to store other stations into other preset numbers.

Notes:

- A previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

Tuning in to a preset station

You can easily tune in to a preset station. Remember that you must store stations first. If vou have not stored them vet. see "Storing stations in memory" on pages 13 and 14.

Selecting a preset station directly

Select the band (FM1 - 3, AM).

- 1 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.
- 2 Press and hold SRC. Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

→ FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM-

2 Select the number (1 - 6) for the preset station you want.



Note:

1

You can also use the \blacktriangle *(up) or* \blacktriangledown *(down) button on* the unit to select the next or previous preset stations. Each time you press the \blacktriangle (up) or \checkmark (down) button, the next or previous preset station is tuned in.

When using the remote controller

- 1 Press FM or AM.
 - · When selecting the FM bands, press FM repeatedly until the band you want is selected.



2 Press the number buttons (1 to 6) while holding SHIFT (S).



Note:

You can also use the PRESET (FOLDER) ▲ / ▼ buttons for selecting a preset station.

<u>Selecting a preset station using the</u> preset station list

If you forget which stations are stored in which preset numbers, you can check the preset station list, then select your desired station.

Select the band (FM1 – 3, AM).

- 1 Press SRC (source) repeatedly to select the tuner.
- Press and hold SRC.
 Each time you press and hold the button, the band changes.

→ FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM-

2 Press and hold ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) until the preset station list for the current band (FM1, FM2, FM3, or AM) appears on the display.

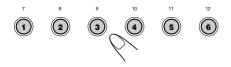


TUNER 92.	
FM1 P1 2 89. Preset	.9 BRock
STEREO	I BPOP

Notes:

- You can show the other FM band preset station lists (FM1, FM2, or FM3) by pressing ▲ (up) or ▼ (down).
- If a name has been assigned to a station (see page 57), it will be shown instead of the station frequency.

3 Select the number (1 – 6) for the preset station you want.



Changing the display pattern

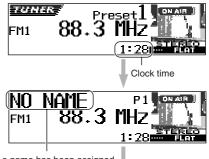
By pressing DISP (D), you can change the information shown on the display.



Each time you press the button, the display patterns change as follows:



Appears only when selecting a preset station number.



If a name has been assigned to a station, it will be shown instead of "NO NAME."



PLAYABLE DISCS

Discs you can play:

Disc Type	Mark (Logo)		Video Format	Region Code*
DVD Video		VIDEO	NTSC/PAL	3 ALL
Video CD	DIGITAL VIDEO	Video CD	NTSC/PAL	
Audio CD				
MP3 disc	CD-Rs or CD-RWs including MP3 files with the file extension code <mp3>. They must be recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.</mp3>			

- On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.
- The following discs cannot be played back;
 - DVD-Audio, DVD-ROM, DVD-RAM, DVD-R, DVD-RW, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

* Note on Region Code

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include "3."



Examples:

If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

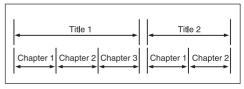
"REGION CODE ERROR!" appears on the monitor, and "Please Eject" flashes on the display. (If the control panel is not yet closed, the disc ejects automatically.)

Disc structure

DVD

A DVD disc consists of **Titles**, and each title may be divided into **Chapters**.

For example, if a DVD disc contains some movies, each movie may have its own title number, and it may be further divided into chapters.



Video CD (VCD) and Audio CD (CD)

On the other hand, a VCD or CD consists of **Tracks**.

In general, each song has its own track number. (On some discs, each track may also be divided by **Indexes**.)

When playing back a VCD with the Playback Control (PBC) function, you can select what to view using the menu shown on the monitor. (While operating a VCD using the menu, some of the functions such as Repeat and Track Search may not work.)



MP3 discs

MP3 is an abbreviation of Motion Picture Experts Group 1 (or MPEG-1) Audio Layer 3. MP3 is simply a file format with a data compression. By using MP3 format, one CD-R or CD-RW can contain 10 times as much data as a regular CD can.

On an MP3 disc, files (also called "tracks" and both words are used interchangeably in this manual) are usually grouped into a folder. Folders can also include other folders, creating hierarchical layers of folders.

This unit can recognize up to 150 files per folder, and up to 99 folders per disc (up to 14,850 files). The unit ignores those exceeding the maximum number and cannot play them back.

 All folders on the disc are counted in the total number of 150, even a folder which does not include any MP3 files.



Notes for MP3 disc

- MP3 discs require a longer readout time, which differs due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration.
- This unit supports "multi-session" discs.
- This unit cannot play "packet write" discs.
- The unit can play MP3 files with the correct extension code—<.mp3> (case insensitive—any combination of upper and/or lower is acceptable)
- It is recommended that MP3 files be recorded at a sample rate of 44.1 kHz and at a data transfer rate of 128 kbps.
- For more information about MP3 discs, see "A Guide to MP3" (separate volume).

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

• Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT/2nd AUDIO OUT):

2-channel signal is emitted.

When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—ANALOG DOWN MIX: see page 46)

• Through DIGITAL OUT (optical): Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*, DTS**, MPEG Multichannel) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 71.)

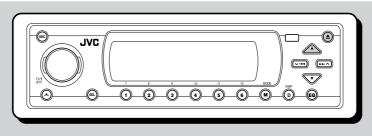
To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multichannel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" to the correct value. (See page 46.)

About Dual Zone

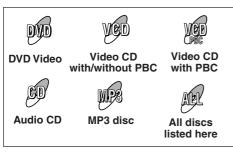
While you are listening to the radio, CD changer, or external component through the speakers built into your car compartment, you can listen to the playback sound of this DVD/CD player using the headphones connected to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug at the same time.

- For details, see "DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS" on page 30.
- * Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- ** "DTS" and "DTS Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.





The following marks used in this manual indicate the playable discs.



Before performing any operations, make sure the following....

- To watch the playback pictures, select the an appropriate video system (NTSC or PAL) to match it to the connected monitor. (See page 53.)
- Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control the CD and MP3 playback by referring to the monitor screen.
- For DVD playback, you can change the Setup Menu setting to your preference. (See pages 43 46.)
- When you want to operate the DVD/CD player using the buttons on the control panel, see "OTHER DISC OPERATIONS" on pages 35 to 42.

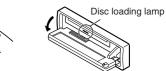
If " O "appears on the monitor when

pressing a button, the disc cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

 In some cases, without showing " (>," operations will not be accepted.

Starting playback

Open the control panel.



2 Insert a disc into the loading slot.

The disc loading lamp start flashing, and the unit draws in the disc automatically.

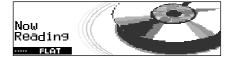
DO NOT insert a disc while the disc loading lamp is flashing* or is not lit**.

- * Flashing: while loading or ejecting a disc
- **Not lit: when a disc has been loaded.

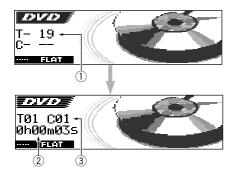
3 Close the control panel by hand.



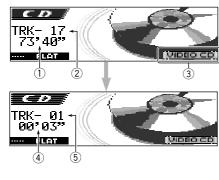
The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically. (If a disc is CD, VCD without the PBC function, or MP3, playback will be repeated until you stop it.)



 If a menu appears while playing a DVD or VCD with PBC function, see "Menu operations" on page 24. • Display indications when inserting a DVD:

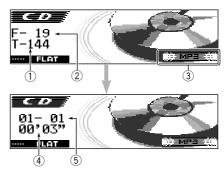


- ① Total title number
- Elapsed playing time of the current title
- $\ensuremath{\textcircled{3}}$ Current title number and chapter number
- Display indications when inserting a VCD or CD:



- 1 Total playback time of the disc
- ② Total track number
- ③ VIDEO CD indicator: appears only when playing back a Video CD.
- Elapsed playing time of the current track
- ⑤ Current track number

• Display indications when inserting an MP3 disc



- ① Total track number
- 2 Total folder number
- ③ MP3 indicator
- ④ Elapsed playing time of the current track
- (5) Current folder number and track number

Note:

When a new folder starts playing, its folder name is shown on the display (the display pattern automatically changes for a while—see page 42.)

Caution:

When you start playing a Mixed-CD, playback will stop at the beginning of the first track (with [00'00"] shown for the elapsed playing time). If this happens, skipping to the second track or higher will start playback from the newly selected track.

• For details about the Mixed-CD, refer to "A Guide to MP3" (separate volume).

Notes:

- When a disc is already in the loading slot, selecting "DISC" as the source starts disc play.
- This unit cannot read or play an MP3 file without the extension code <mp3>.
- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects (if the control panel is open). If the control panel is closed, the source changes to the previously selected source, "Please Eject" flashes on the display.



To stop playback temporarily

Press **II on the remote controller**. "Pause" flashes on the display.





For DVD and VCD only: A still picture appears

Frame by Frame Playback—You can advance the still picture frame by frame by pressing the **II** repeatedly.

To resume normal speed, press ►.

Slow Motion Playback— You can advance the still picture in slow motion by pressing ▶▶ or ◄. Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

$$\textcircled{1/32 \rightarrow 1/16 \rightarrow 1/8 \rightarrow 1/4 \rightarrow 1/2}$$

To resume normal speed, press ►.

Notes:

- No sound comes out during Reverse Slow Motion
 Playback
- When playing a VCD, Reverse Slow Motion Playback is prohibited.

To replay the previous scenes —One Touch Replay



Press \blacktriangleright on the remote controller (or \blacktriangle (up) on the control panel) during play.

The playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position.

Notes:

- This function works only within the same title.
- For some DVDs, this function does not work.

To stop playback

Press on the remote controller.

- Except for MP3 discs: This unit can remember the end point (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from where it has been stopped. (Resume play)
- For MP3 discs: This unit can remember the last playing track (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from the beginning of the same track.

To eject a disc

Press **A** on the control panel.

Playback stops and the control panel flips down. The disc comes out of the loading slot.

Locating a particular title/ chapter/track

To go to the next or previous chapter/tracks



• For DVD: During play or pause

Press >> to go ahead to the beginning of the next chapter/track. Each time you press the button, the beginning of the next chapter/track is located (and played back).

Press I do go back to the beginning of the current chapter/track.

Each time you press the button, the beginning of the previous chapter/track is located (and played back).

Note:

Playback will not start automatically if you locate the chapter/track while a disc is pausing or not playing.

ENGLISH

To locate a particular title/chapter/track directly

- For DVD: During play or pause—select a chapter While stopped—select a title
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

From the remote controller:

While holding SHIFT (S), press number buttons to select a title, chapter, or track number you want.





Examples:

- To select number 5, press 5 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 10, press 10 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3 while pressing SHIFT (S).

Notes:

- If you directly select the track number for a VCD with the PBC function while it is not playing, playback starts with PBC function canceled. (See page 24).
- Playback will not start automatically if you select a chapter or track during pause.

Locating a particular folder





Press FOLDER (PRESET) \blacktriangle to select the next folder. Each time you press the button, the next folder is located and the first track in it starts playing.

Press FOLDER (PRESET) \checkmark to select the previous folder. Each time you press the button, the previous folder is located and the first track in it starts playing.

Note:

If a folder does not contain any MP3 tracks, it is skipped.

On-screen guide icons



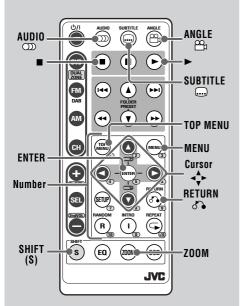
During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

- Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (for DVD only).
- Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (for DVD only).
- Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (for DVD only).
- ►: Appears when you press ►.
- III : Appears when you press II.

- : Appears when you start forward slow motion. (Slow motion speed also appears.) (for DVD and VCD only).
- Appears when you start reverse slow motion. (Slow motion speed also appears.) (for DVD only).
 - Appears when you start forward search. (Search speed also appears.)
- Appears when you start reverse search. (Search speed also appears.)
- Appears when you select repeat mode (see page 28).



DVD/VCD SPECIAL FUNCTIONS



Selecting subtitles



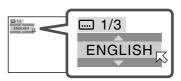
While playing a disc containing subtitles in different languages, you can select which subtitle to display.

• You can also set your favorite subtitle language as the initial language shown on the monitor. (See pages 43 to 45.)

Select a desired subtitle language.



The following pop-up window appears on the monitor. Each time you press the button, the subtitle language changes.



Ex. When the disc has 3 selections— English, French, Spanish and no subtitle (OFF)

Notes:

- When the pop-up window is shown, you can also select the subtitle languages by pressing cursor buttons (▲/▼).
- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the subtitle language without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting audio languages

For DVD:

While playing a disc containing multiple audio languages (ex. English, French, Spanish), you can select the language to listen to.

• You can also set your favorite language as the initial audio language. (See pages 43 to 45.)

For VCD:

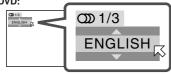
When you play a VCD, you can select the audio channel to play. This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.

Select a desired audio language (or audio channel).



The following pop-up window appears on the monitor. Each time you press the button, the audio language (or audio channel) changes.

• For DVD:



Ex. When the disc has 3 selections-English, French, and Spanish

• For VCD:



- ST: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.
- L: To listen to the L (left) audio channel.
- R: To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

Notes:

- When the pop-up window is shown, you can also select the audio languages (or audio channels) by pressing cursor buttons (▲/▼).
- For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Selecting multi-angle views



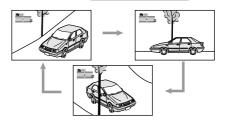
While playing a disc containing multi-angle views, you can view the same scene at different angles.

Select a desired view angle.



The following pop-up window appears on the monitor. Each time you press the button, the view angle changes.





Ex.: When the disc has 3 multi-angle views

Note:

When the pop-up window is shown, you can also select the multi-angle views by pressing cursor buttons $(\land \land \checkmark)$.



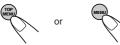
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PBC (PlayBack Control) function.

While playing a DVD:

DVD discs generally have their own menus or title lists. A title list usually contains titles of movies and songs recorded. On the other hand, a menu usually contains various information about the disc and playback selections.

Press TOP MENU or MENU.

A title list or menu will appear on the monitor.



2 Select the item you want from the menu or the title list, by pressing cursor buttons (▲ / ▼ / ► / ◄) then ENTER.

The unit starts playback of the selected item.



• On some discs, you can also select items by pressing the number buttons corresponding to the item numbers listed.

To return to the previous menu

Press RETURN &.

To cancel the title list or menu

Press TOP MENU or MENU.

If " \bigotimes "appears on the monitor in step 1, the disc does not have a title list or menu.

While playing a VCD:

The PBC (PlayBack Control) function allows you to operate the VCD using menus. When you start playback, a menu will automatically appear on the monitor.

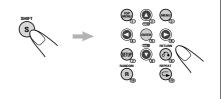
• A menu may be a list of items, divided screens, or some moving pictures.

Select the item you want from the menu.

- When a list of items is displayed on the monitor, press the number buttons to select an item.
- When "▶" or "SELECT" is displayed on the monitor, press ▶ (or ENTER if pressing ▶ does not work) to start playback.

How to select items using the number buttons

- To select number 5, press 5 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 10, press 10 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3 while pressing SHIFT (S).



To return to the previous menu

Press RETURN 8.



To cancel the PBC playback

You can cancel the menu-driven operations (PBC function):

- 1 Press to stop playback.
- 2 Press number buttons to select a track. Normal playback starts from the selected track.

To resume the PBC function again, press TOP MENU or MENU.



Zoom in

DYDYED

You can zoom into a particular portion of the picture while playing a DVD or VCD.

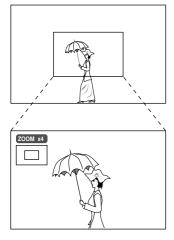
Zoom in to the picture.



The pop-up window appears on the monitor to show the current magnification. Each time you press the button, magnification change as follows:

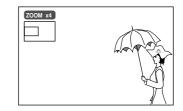
$$\Rightarrow x 2 \Rightarrow x 4 \Rightarrow x 8 \Rightarrow x 1 \Rightarrow x 2 \Rightarrow x 4 \Rightarrow$$
$$x 8 \Rightarrow \cdots$$





2 Move the zoomed-in portion on the monitor.





Note:

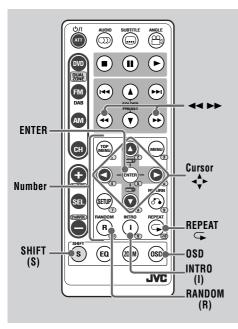
While zoomed in, the picture may look coarse.

To cancel Zoom, press ENTER or press ZOOM repeatedly until "ZOOM x1" appears.

०

ADVANCED DISC OPERATIONS





Searching for a particular point

Forward/Reverse Search



You can search for a particular point while playing a disc.

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter or

track, press ►► or ◄< while playing a disc.



Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

 $x2 \Rightarrow x5 \Rightarrow x10 \Rightarrow x20 \Rightarrow x60^*$

To resume normal speed, press ►.

When using the buttons on the control panel Press and hold \rightarrow or \checkmark if while playing a disc.

The search speed changes: $x2 \Rightarrow x10$.

• If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

Notes:

- * "x60" is only for DVD.
- When playing an MP3 disc, no sound comes out during Search.
- When playing a DVD or VCD, no sound comes out during x5, x10, x20, and x60 Search.
- Reverse Search stops automatically when it reaches the beginning of the disc. Playback resumes at normal speed.

<u>Time Search</u>



You can start playing a particular point by specifying the elapsed playing time of the current title (for DVD) and of the disc (CD and VCD).

- For DVD: During play or pause.
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Press OSD twice.



The on-screen bar appears on the monitor.

• For details on the on-screen bar, see pages 32 and 33.

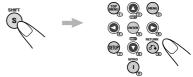
 DVD-VIDEO
 DD Digital 5.1 ch
 TITLE 33
 CHAP 33
 TOTAL 1:25:58
 ►

 TIME
 ○OFF
 ○→
 CHAP. →
 ○◯
 1/3
 □□
 1/5
 □□
 1/3



The time entry window appears.

3 Press number buttons (0 to 9) to enter the time while holding SHIFT (S).



Example (for DVD VIDEO)

To play back from 2(H):34(M):00(S) Press number buttons 2, 3, then 4.



To play back from 58(M):00(S) Press number buttons 0, 5, then 8.

TIME 0:58:__

Example (for Video CD/Audio CD)

To play back from 23(M):40(S) Press number buttons 2, 3, then 4.

TIME 23:4_

You do not have to press "0" to enter the trailing zeros.

To correct a mistake

Press cursor button ◄ repeatedly to move back to the digit where you entered a wrong number, and reenter the correct one.

4 Finish entry.

The unit starts playback from the specified time.

To erase the on-screen bar, press OSD once.

Chapter Search

		/	
r	M	V	R
Ľ	J٨	Ш	Ľ,
ſ	2	/	

You can select a specific chapter when a DVD is inserted.

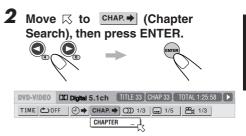
Press OSD twice.



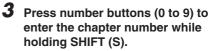
The on-screen bar appears on the monitor.

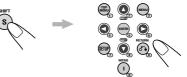
• For details about the on-screen bar, see pages 32 and 33.

DVD-VIDEO DC	Digital 5.1ch TITLE 33 CHAP 33 TOTAL 1:25:58	9
TIME COFF	(○ → CHAP. → ()) 1/3 (m 1/5 (C) 1/3 (1 /3 (1)))	



The chapter number entry window appears.





- To select number 5, press 5 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 10, press 1, then 0 while pressing SHIFT (S).
- To select number 23, press 2, then 3 while pressing SHIFT (S).

To correct a mistake

- To correct a two digit number, enter the correct number again.
- To correct a single digit number, press 0 first, then enter the correct number.

4 Finish entry.



The unit starts playback from the selected chapter.

To erase the on-screen bar, press OSD once.



Playing in various play modes

You can use any of three methods to activate various play modes.

- Using the direct buttons on the remote controller.
- Using the on-screen bar (see page 32).
- Using the buttons on the control panel (see page 38).

In the following explanation, how to use the direct buttons on the remote controller is explained.

<u>Repeat Play</u>



• For VCD/CD:

You can repeat a title, chapter, track, or disc endlessly.

• For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

Select the repeat mode you want.



The menu bar icon appears on the monitor to show the selected mode. Each time you press the button, the repeat mode changes as follows:

• For DVD:

\rightarrow CHAP \rightarrow TITLE \neg	
└─── 0FF < ───	

- CHAP: Current (or specified) chapter will be repeated.
 CHAP indicator appears on
- the monitor.
 TITLE: Current title will be repeated.
 <u>©TITLE</u> indicator appears on the monitor.
- OFF: Repeat Play is canceled.
 Content of the monitor.

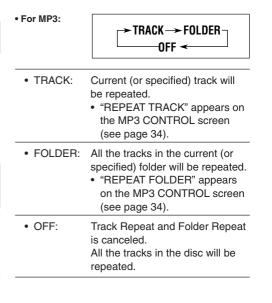
TRACK: Current (or specified) track will be repeated.

• **CTRACK** indicator appears on the monitor.

TRACK ----- OFF

• OFF: Track Repeat is canceled. All the tracks in the disc will be repeated.

 COFF indicator appears on the monitor.



Notes:

- On some DVDs, Repeat Play may be canceled by the disc itself.
- On CD, VCD, and MP3 discs, Repeat Play mode cannot be turned off.
- Repeat Play mode will be canceled when you start playing back a VCD with the PBC function.

Select the random mode you want. The menu bar icon appears on the monitor to show the selected mode. Each time you press the button, the random mode changes as follows: • For CD/VCD: • For CD/VCD: DISC ----> OFF • DISC: All the tracks in the disc will be • TRACK: played at random. RND. indicator on the menu • bar (see page 33) is highlighted in blue. • OFF: OFF: Random Play is canceled. • For MP3: • For MP3: ➤FOLDER → DISC -– OFF 🗲

 FOLDER: All the tracks in the folder will be played at random, then move to the next folder and so on.

Random Play

for MP3 discs) at random.

use.

You can play back tracks on a disc (or in a folder

• For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in

 "RND FOLDER" appears on the MP3 CONTROL screen (see page 34).

• DISC: All the tracks in the disc will be plaved at random. • "RND DISC" appears on the MP3 CONTROL screen (see page 34).

• OFF: Random Play is canceled.

• For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.

You can play back the first 15 seconds of each

Select the intro scan mode you want.

The menu bar icon appears on the monitor to show the selected mode. Each time you press the button, the intro scan mode changes as follows:

The beginnings of all the tracks

• "INTRO TRACK" appears on

the MP3 CONTROL screen

The beginnings of the first tracks

"INTRO FOLDER" appears on

the MP3 CONTROL screen

in all folders will be played.

in the disc will be played.

(see page 34).

(see page 34).

Intro Scan is canceled.

track sequentially.

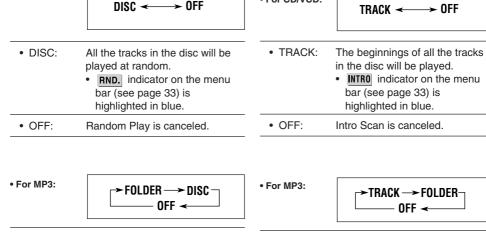
Intro Scan

TRACK:

FOLDER:

OFF:

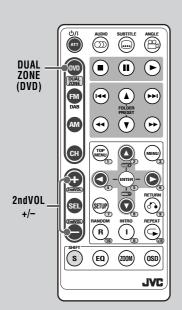






DUAL ZONE OPERATIONS

ENGLISH



- DO NOT put on the headphones while driving a car. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- DO NOT put on the headphones before adjusting the headphone volume level properly; otherwise, it may damage your hearing.

For Dual Zone operations, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the receiver as usual, not at the monitor.

Listening with headphones



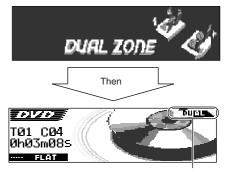
By connecting headphones to the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug on the rear, you can listen to the playback sound through the DVD/CD player while listening to another source (except AM) through the speakers.

You can activate Dual Zone while listening to any source.

- You can operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.
- While holding SHIFT (S), press DUAL ZONE (DVD) to activate Dual Zone.



Each time you press DUAL ZONE (DVD), Dual Zone is turned on and off alternately.



DUAL indicator appears.

The source automatically changes to "DISC."

To select a different source (except AM) to listen through the speakers, press SRC on the control panel. By using the buttons on the control panel, you can operate the newly selected source without affecting Dual Zone operations.

ENGLISH



2 Adjust the headphone volume through the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug.



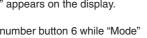
- **3** Operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller by referring to the monitor screen.
 - When Dual Zone is in use, you can only operate the DVD/CD player using the remote controller.

To control the other sources (except AM) while Dual Zone is activated, use the buttons on the control panel.

On the control panel:

You can also activate and deactivate Dual Zone, but can neither control the DVD/CD player nor adjust the headphone volume level.

- To adjust the headphone level, use the remote controller.
- Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode while listening to any source.
 "Mode" appears on the display.



2 Press number button 6 while "Mode" is still on the display.



MODE



DUAL indicator appears.

The source automatically changes to "DISC."

To cancel Dual Zone operations, repeat steps **1** and **2** ("Dual Zone Off" appears on the display.)

When the sounds through the rear speakers are troublesome while listening with the headphones

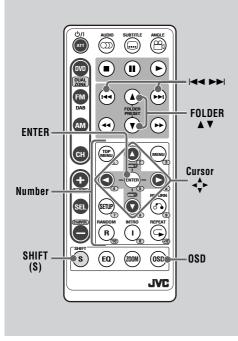
You can deactivate the rear speaker sound output.

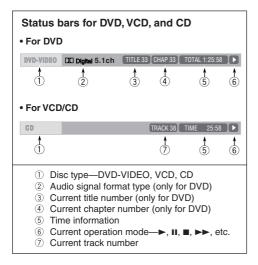
- See also "Changing the general settings (PSM)" on page 50.
- 1 Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display.
- 2 Press number button 5 to select "AUDIO"— Audio category of the PSM settings.
- 3 Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ to select "Rear SPK."
- 4 Turn the control dial counterclockwise to select "Off."
- 5 Press SEL (select) to finish the setting.

To reactivate the rear speakers, repeat the same procedure and select "On" in step 4 by turning the control dial clockwise.



OSD DISC OPERATIONS





Note:

While operating an MP3 disc on the monitor screen, see page 34.

Operations on the monitor screen



You can show the on-screen bar on the monitor, and operate the disc using the on-screen bar.

Basic procedure for DVD, VCD and CD

Press OSD once.



A status bar for the type of disc inserted appears on the monitor. • For details, see the left column.

Note:

When you start playing a CD, the status bar automatically appears.

2 Press OSD again.



A menu bar appears under the status bar.

• For details about the items on the menu bar, see page 33.

• For DVD

DVD-VIDEO	DD Digital 5.1 ch	TITLE 33 CHAP 33	TOTAL 1:25:58
TIME COF	F 🕘 🔿 CHAP.	◆ ① 1/3 m 1/5	⇔ ₁ 1/3

• For VCD

VCD	TRACK 38 TIME 25:58
TIME COFF	INTRO RND. OD ST

• For CD

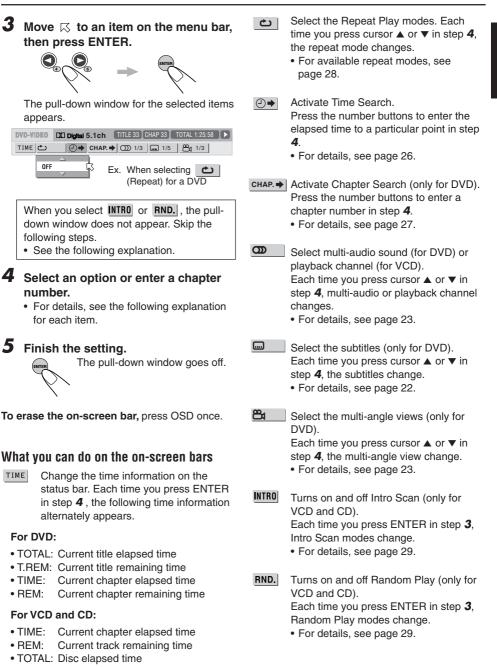


Note:

While playing a CD Text, the disc information will also be shown on the monitor. (The maximum number of the characters shown on the monitor is 64, while 255 characters on the display of the receiver.)



ENGLISH



• T.REM: Disc remaining time

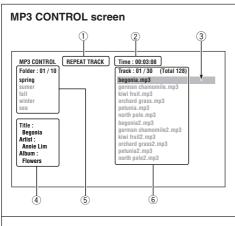


Basic procedure for MP3 discs



While playing an MP3 disc, the following MP3 CONTROL screen always shows on the monitor. By referring to this screen, you can easily operate the MP3 disc.

- Up to 32 characters can be shown for the file names on the monitor, while 64 characters on the display of the receiver.
- For more details about MP3 discs, refer to "A Guide to MP3" (separate volume).



- 1 Currently activated play mode
- 2 Elapsed playing time of the current track
- ③ Cursor (highlighted position)
- ④ ID3 Tag information (see page 68)
- Folder column—folder names (Ex. The first folder is selected out of 10 folders)
 Only 5 folders can be listed at a time.
- Track column—track names (Ex. The first track is selected out of 30 tracks in the current folder. 128 tracks are included in the disc)
 - Only 12 tracks can be listed at a time.

Operations from the remote controller:

To select (highlight) a "Folder" column or "Track" column on the screen, press cursor ► or ◄.

To select a folder, press cursor \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown when the cursor (highlighted position) is in the "Folder" column.

If there are unshown folders, they will appear in this column as you selecting folders.

 By pressing FOLDER (PRESET) ▲ or FOLDER (PRESET) ▼, you can change the folder without respect to the cursor (highlighted) position.

To select a track, press cursor \blacktriangle or \blacktriangledown when the cursor (highlighted position) is in the "Track" column.

If there are unshown tracks, they will appear in this column as you selecting tracks.

 By pressing →→I or I◄◄, you can change the tracks without respect to the cursor (highlighted) position.

To select Repeat Play modes, press REPEAT

(⊂) repeatedly until the Repeat Play mode you want appears on the screen.

• For details about the Repeat Play modes, see page 28.

To select Random Play modes, press

RANDOM (R) repeatedly until the Random Play mode you want appears on the screen.

• For details about the Random Play modes, see page 29.

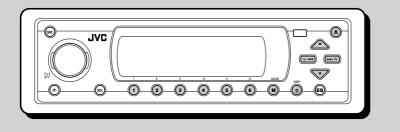
To select Intro Scan modes, press INTRO (I) repeatedly until the Intro Scan mode you want appears on the screen.

• For details about the Intro Scan modes, see page 29.

Note:

When using the buttons on the control panel, you can use various methods for performing the above operations. These different methods are explained in "OTHER DISC OPERATIONS" on pages 35 to 42.

OTHER DISC OPERATIONS



In this section, you can learn how to use the buttons on the control panel in order to operate the DVD/CD player.

Basic disc playback

To stop playback



Press ▼ (down).

· This unit can remember the end point, and when you start playback again, playback begins from where it has been stopped. (Resume play)

To start playback again



Press **(**up).

Playback begins from where it has been stopped.

Normally disc playback automatically starts in the following cases:

- · When you insert a disc Playback starts from the beginning of the disc.
- When change the source to "DISC" (DVD/CD player) if a disc has been inserted Plavback starts from where it has been stopped. (Resume play)

Note:

If you press the button during DVD playback, the playback position moves back about 10 seconds before the current position. (See page 20: One Touch Replay)

To eject a disc



Press A

Playback stops and the control panel flips down. The disc comes out of the loading slot.

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter/ $M_{ m P}$ track (Forward/Reverse Search)





Press and hold \rightarrow , while plaving a disc, to fast-forward the chapter/track. The search speed changes: x2 → x10.

Press and hold \checkmark $\triangleleft \triangleleft$, while playing a disc, to reverse the chapter/track. The search speed changes: x2 → x10.

Notes:

- When playing an MP3 disc, no sound comes out during Search.
- When playing a DVD or VCD, no sound comes out during x10 Search.
- Reverse Search stops automatically when it reaches the beginning of the disc. Playback resumes at normal speed.

To go to the next or previous chapter/tracks

For DVD: During play or pause.

Press **I** A briefly to go ahead to the beginning of the next chapter/track. Each time you press the button consecutively, the beginning of the next chapter/track is located and played back.

Press VIM briefly to go back to the beginning of the current chapter/track.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the beginning of the previous chapter/track is located and played back.

Note:

Playback will not start automatically if you locate the chapter/track while a disc is pausing or not playing.

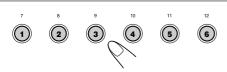


Locating a title/chapter/track on a disc



To locate a particular title/chapter/track directly

- For DVD: During play or pause—select a chapter
 - While stopped—select a title
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.



Press the number button corresponding to the title/chapter/track number to start its playback.

- To select a number from 1 6: Press 1 (7) – 6 (12) briefly.
- To select a number from 7 12: Press and hold 1 (7) – 6 (12) for more than 1 second.

Notes:

- If you directly select the track number for a VCD with the PBC function while it is not playing, playback starts with PBC function canceled. (See page 24).
- Playback will not start automatically if you select a chapter or track during pause.

To go to a chapter/track quickly



- For DVD: During play or pause.
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.
- Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode.
 "Mode" appears on the display.



While playing a DVD:



While playing a VCD or CD:

TRK- 15 00'23"	X	Mode	+10▲ Track -10▼
INTRO RPT	RND	OFF	DUAL

While playing an MP3 disc:



2 Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down), while "Mode" is still on the display. First time you press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down), the chapter/track skips

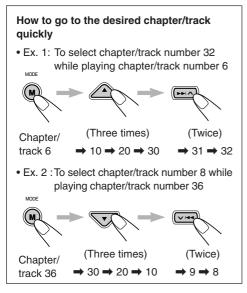


to the nearest higher or lower chapter/track with a chapter/track number of an even multiple ten (ex. 10th, 20th, 30th). Then, each time you press the button, you can skip 10 chapters/tracks (see "How to go to the desired chapter/track quickly" that follows).

Notes:

- For CD and VCD: If you perform this operation while a disc is not playing, playback will not start automatically.
- Except for DVD: After the last track, the first track will be selected, and vice versa.
- While playing an MP3 disc, this operation is possible only within a folder.

NGLISH



To skip to the next or previous folder





Press ▲ (up) while playing a disc to skip to the next folder. Each time you press the button consecutively, the next folder is located and the first track in the folder starts playing.

Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ (down) while playing a disc to skip back to the previous folder.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the previous folder is located and the first track in the folder starts playing.

Note:

If the folder does not contain any MP3 tracks, it is skipped.

Selecting a folder/track to play using the lists



You can show the folder name and track name lists on the display while playing a disc, then select the folder or track you want.

To select a folder and start playback

Press and hold ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) so that the folder name list of the inserted disc appears on the display.



The name of the currently playing folder will be highlighted on the display.

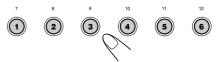
Current folder number

	DISCO	∂ Is-m
Folder	POPS	8 Behex
	K-Shi	B SLK

Notes:

- The display can show only six items at a time. You can show the other items on the next lists by pressing ▲ (up) or ▼ (down).
- If you press → ∧ or ∨ ⊣ , the track name list of the current playing folder appears. (See the following column.)
- Only folders including MP3 tracks will be listed.

2 Select the number (1 – 6) for the folder you want to play.





1

To select a track and start playback

Press and hold \blacktriangle (up) or \blacktriangledown (down) so that the folder name list of the inserted disc appears on the display.



The name of the currently playing folder will be highlighted on the display.

Current folder number

CD,	DISCO	∰ls-m
<u>01-</u> Folder	POPS	🛿 Behex
I UIUGI FLAT	∎8K-Shi	⊜ SLK

2 Press ►► ∧ or ∨ I < to show the track list of the current folder.



Each time you press the button, the lists on the display changes as follows:

Current track number

CD	€ 9 L9.mP3	⊎BreakinC
- 0 Track	ם_@MAX150	obreaking m⊜A Porta.
TTUCK	_ 0urse.mp	3 8 9888.mp3

Note:

The display can shows only six items at a time. You can show the other items on the next lists by pressing \blacktriangle (up) or \blacktriangledown (down).

3 Select the number (1 – 6) for the track you want to play.



Selecting playback modes

Repeat Play



You can repeat a title, chapter, track, or disc.

- For DVD: During play or pause.
- For VCD: While PBC (see page 24) is not in use.
- Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode.
 "Mode" appears on the display.



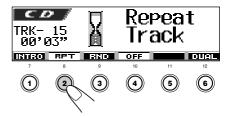


TØ1 CØ1 ØhØ0m23s BET OFF QUAL

Ex. While playing a DVD

2 Press number button 2, while "Mode" is still on the display.

Each time you press the button, repeat play mode changes as follows:



Ex. While playing a CD

• For DVD:	Chapter → Title → Off <	
Chapter:	Current (or specified) chapter will be repeated. •	
• Title:	Current title will be repeated. • T-RPT indicator appears on the display.	
• Off:	Repeat Play is canceled.	

• For CD/VCD:	Track Off	
Track:	Current (or specified) track will be repeated. • ♪ ₽₽⊤ indicator appears on the display.	
• Off:	All the tracks in the disc will be repeated.	

• For MP3:	→ Track → Folder → Off <	
• Track:	 Current (or specified) track will be repeated. ■ ■■ ■ indicator appears or the display. 	
• Folder:	 All the tracks in the current (or specified) folder will be repeated. □ RFT indicator appears on the display. 	
• Off:	All the tracks in the disc will be repeated.	

To cancel Repeat Play, select "Repeat Off" by pressing number button 2 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.

Notes:

- On some DVDs, Repeat Play may be canceled by the disc itself.
- On CD, VCD, and MP3 discs, Repeat Play mode cannot be turned off.
- Repeat Play mode will be canceled when you start playing back a VCD with the PBC function.

Random Play



You can play back tracks on a disc (or in a folder) at random.

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode. "Mode" appears on the display.



2 Press number button 3, while "Mode" is still on the display.

Each time you press the button, Random Play mode changes as follows:



Ex. While playing a CD

ENGLISH

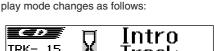
• For CD:	Disc 🔶 Off	
Disc:	 All the tracks in the disc will be played at random. END indicator appears on the display.	
• Off:	Random Play is canceled.	
• For MP3:	Folder> Disc Off <	
Folder:	 All the tracks in the folder will be played at random, then move to the next folder and so on. E RND indicator appears on the display. 	
Disc:	 All the tracks in the disc will be played at random. ■ RND indicator appears on the display. 	
• Off:	Random Play is canceled.	

To cancel Random Play, select "Random Off" by pressing number button 3 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.

Intro Scan

You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

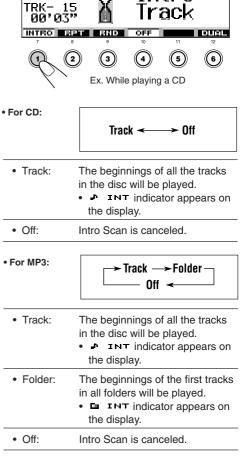
1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode. "Mode" appears on the display.



2 Press number button 1, while "Mode" is still

Each time you press the button, Intro Scan

on the display.



To cancel Intro Scan, select "Intro Off" by pressing number button 1 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.



MODE

Prohibiting disc ejection

You can prohibit disc ejection and can lock a disc in the loading slot.

While pressing SRC, press and hold ウ/I ATT for more than 2 seconds.

"No Eject" flashes on the display for about 5 seconds, and the disc is locked and cannot be ejected.

ЙЙ

To cancel the prohibition and unlock the disc

While pressing SRC, press **O**/I ATT again for more than 2 seconds.

"Eject OK" flashes on the display for about 5 seconds, and the disc is unlocked.



Changing the display pattern

By pressing DISP (D), you can change the information shown on the display.

• If the information cannot be shown at a time, it will scroll on the display.

Some characters or symbols will not be shown (will be blanked or substituted) on the display.

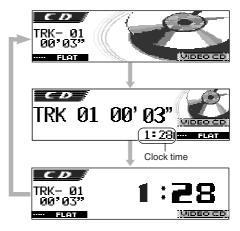


Each time you press the button, the display patterns change as follows:

While playing a DVD:



While playing a VCD:



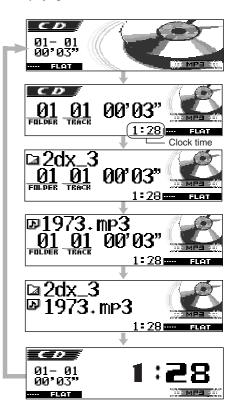
CONTINUED ON THE NEXT PAGE

ENGLISH

While playing a CD Text (or CD):



While playing an MP3 disc:



The above diagram shows examples of the display when "Tag" is set to "Off."

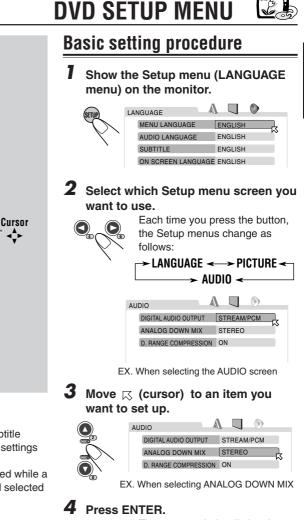
Notes:

- When the disc title/performer is shown, the (disc) indicator lights up. When the track title is shown, the i (track) indicator lights up.
- If no name is assigned to the conventional CD, "NO NAME" will appear. To assign a name to a conventional CD, see page 57.
- If no disc title/performer or no track title is recorded for the CD Text, "NO NAME" will appear.

Notes:

- When the folder name is shown, the a (folder) indicator lights up. When the file name is shown, the
 (file) indicator lights up.
- If "Tag" is set to "On" (see page 52), ID3 tag information will appear on the display if the disc has an ID3 tag. The and (disc) indicator appears for album name/performer; while the and (track) indicator appears for track title.

HSIJDNE



You can store the initial selection for subtitle languages, audio languages, and other settings using the Setup Menu.

R

EQ GOOM (osd

@

JVC

Î

ENTER

SETUP

· DVD Setup menu can only be displayed while a disc, except MP3 disc, is inserted and selected for the playback source.

The following operations are only possible using the remote controller, and by referring to the monitor screen.

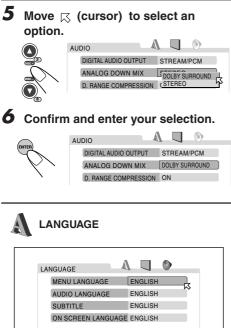


The pop-up window listing the selectable options appear on the screen.

AUDIO	
DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	STREAM/PCM
ANALOG DOWN MIX	STOLBY SURROUND
D. RANGE COMPRESSION	(STEREO

CONTINUED ON THE NEXT PAGE





SELECT SELECT, USE AV IN TO SELECT, USE ENTER TO CONFIRM. ENTER TO EXIT, PRESS SETUP.

You can select the initial languages for the disc menu, audio, and subtitle.

You can also select the language for the Setup menu and some indications shown on the monitor.



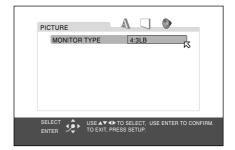
To set other items on the same menu

To set other items on other menu screens Repeat steps **2** to **6**.

To return to the normal screen

Press SETUP.

PICTURE



You can select the desired options concerning picture size on the monitor.

AUDIO AUDIO DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT STREAM/PCM ANALOG DOWN MIX STEREO D. RANGE COMPRESSION ON BLEET VIELENT O SELECT, USE ENTER TO CONFIRM.

You can adjust the output sounds through this unit.



Items		For what and options	
	MENU LANGUAGE *1	Select the initial disc menu language.	
		ENGLISH, SPANISH, FRENCH, CHINESE, GERMAN, ITALIAN, JAPANESE, and language codes from AA to ZU (see page 67).	
	AUDIO LANGUAGE *1	Select the initial audio language.	
		ENGLISH, SPANISH, FRENCH, CHINESE, GERMAN, ITALIAN, JAPANESE, and language codes from AA to ZU (see page 67).	
IAGE	SUBTITLE *1	Select the initial subtitle language.	
LANGUAGE		OFF (no subtitles), ENGLISH, SPANISH, FRENCH, CHINESE, GERMAN, ITALIAN, JAPANESE, and language codes from AA to ZU (see page 67).	
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the Setup menu and some indications shown on the monitor.	
		ENGLISH, CHINESE, and SPANISH.	
PICTURE	MONITOR TYPE 16:9 4:3 LB 4:3 PS	 ENGLISH, CHINESE, and SPANISH. Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. 16:9 NORMAL *² Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9 and it does not have the screen size adjustment function. 16:9 AUTO Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 16:9 and it has the screen size adjustment function. 4:3 LB (Letter Box) Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen. 4:3 PS (Pan Scan) *³ Select this when the aspect ratio of your monitor is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen. 	

- *1 When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
 - While playing (or pausing), you cannot change these languages. After you change any of these language settings, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.
- ^{*2} When you select "16:9 NORMAL" for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- *³ Even if "4:3 PS" is selected, the screen size may become "4:3 LB" with some DVDs. This depends on how they are recorded.

Items For what and options		For what and options	
	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal on the rear.	
incompatible with Dolby Dig recording device. • DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM Select this when connecting with Dolby Digital. • STREAM/PCM Select this when connecting		 Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital and DTS, or connecting to a recording device. DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM Select this when connecting an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. 	
AUDIO	ANALOG DOWN MIX	When playing back a multi-channel DVD disc, this setting affects the sounds reproduced through the analog terminals.	
4		 STEREO Normally select this to enjoy and reproduce conventional 2- channel stereo sound from the original multi-channel sounds. DOLBY SURROUND Select this when you want to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround to this receiver. 	
	D.RANGE COMPRESSION	You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.	
		 AUTO: Select this to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1 channel and 2 channel software). ON: Select this to always use this function. 	

SOUND ADJUSTMENTS

Operations of this section are explained using the buttons on the control panel unless mentioned otherwise.

Adjusting the sound

You can adjust the sound characteristics to your preference.

 "Vol Adj" setting is required for each source except FM. Before starting "Vol Adj," select an appropriate source for which you want to make an adjustment.

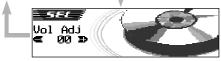
Select the item you want to adjust.

Each time you press the button, the adjustable items change as follows:

Fad (Fader) __ Vol Adj __ Bal (Balance) (Volume Adjustment) _____ Canceled <_____



Canceled



Note:

You can also use the SEL button on the remote controller to call up the fader/balance adjustment screen.

Indication	To do:	Range
Fad*	Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 (Rear only) I F06 (Front only)
Bal	Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 (Left only) I R06 (Right only)
Vol Adj	Adjust and store the input level of each source.	–12 (min.) +12 (max.)

 If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."

2 Make adjustments.

• To adjust fader and balance—Fad, Bal: You can make these two adjustments at the same time, by referring to the indication on the display.



- Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) to adjust the fader.
- Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ to adjust the balance.



Note:

You can also use the $\triangleright \triangleright \mid \land or \lor \mid \checkmark \land$ buttons and FOLDER PRESET \land (up) or FOLDER PRESET \lor (down) on the remote controller for adjustment.

 To adjust the input level of each source —Vol Adj:

This setting is required for each source except FM. Before making an adjustment, select an appropriate source for which you want to make an adjustment. Once you have made an adjustment, it is memorized, and you will not need to adjust the volume level each time you change the source.

Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.



To increase the level

To decrease the level



Selecting preset sound modes (iEQ: intelligent equalizer)

You can select a preset sound mode (iEQ: intelligent equalizer) suitable to the music genre.

• There is a time limit in doing the following procedure. If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 1 again.

Available sound modes:

• FLAT (Flat)

•

- H.ROCK
 (Hard Rock)
 - R&B
- (Rhythm and Blues) **POP**
- (Popular music)
- JAZZ (Jazz music)
- (Jazz music) • DANCE
 - (Dance music)

- (Country music) **REGGAE** (Reggae)
- CLASSIC (Classical music)

Country

- USER 1
- USER 2
- USER 3

Press EQ (equalizer) once.



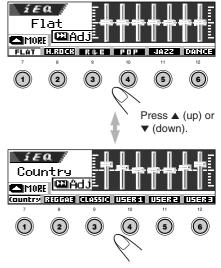
Last selected sound mode is called up.



Ex.: If you have selected "Flat" previously

• If you press the button twice, the level meter selection screen appears (see page 10).

- **2** Press the number button to select the sound mode you want.
 - This unit has two sound mode selection screens. To move to the other screen, press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down).



To cancel the preset sound mode, select "FLAT" in step 2.

To exit from the preset sound mode (iEQ), press EQ (equalizer) repeatedly or wait for about 5 seconds.

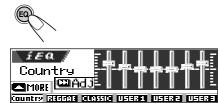
Note:

For details about the preset settings of each sound mode, see page 66.

Storing your own sound adjustments

You can adjust the sound modes to your preference and store your own adjustments in memory (User 1, User 2, and User 3).

- There is a time limit in doing the following procedure. If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step **1** again.
- Press EQ (equalizer) once.



- Ex.: When you have selected "Country" previously
- If you press the button twice, the level meter selection screen appears (see page 10).

2 Select the sound mode you want to adjust.

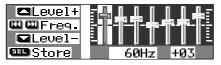


 This unit has two sound mode selection screens. To move to the other screen, press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down).

Enter the sound adjustment mode.



The following sound mode adjustment screen appears on the display.



4 Make adjustments as you like.



- Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I ◄◄ to select the frequency band—60Hz, 150Hz, 400Hz, 1kHz, 2.4kHz, 6kHz, 12kHz.
- Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) to adjust the level of the selected band within the range of -05 to +05.
- 3) Repeat steps 1) and 2) to adjust the other frequency bands.

5 Store the adjustment you made.

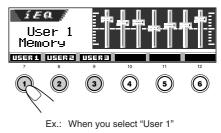


The confirmation message appears—whether you want to store the adjustment.



If you want to cancel the adjustments, press EQ (equalizer).

- Adjustment you made remains effective until you select another sound mode.
- 6 Select one of the user sound modes (User 1, User 2, or User 3) you want to store into.



OTHER MAIN FUNCTIONS

Operations of this section are explained using the buttons on the control panel unless mentioned otherwise.

Changing the general settings (PSM)

You can change the items listed in the table on page 51 by using the PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) control.

 The PSM items are grouped into five categories—MOVIE, CLOCK, DISP (display), AUDIO, and COLOR.

Basic Procedure

Ex. To change "Contrast"

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display.



<u> 2276</u>	⊡Grar	hics	621
Movie	¶ Int	Demo	D
	(DISP		ol oz

2 Press number button (in this example, 3) to select one of the PSM categories.



The first-listed item in the selected category appears.

3 Select the PSM item you want to adjust.





• By pressing ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ repeatedly, you can also move to other categories.

4 Adjust the PSM item selected.





- **5** Repeat steps **2** to **4** to adjust the other PSM items if necessary.
- **6** Finish the setting.





ENGLISH

Preferred Setting Mode (PSM) items

	Ind	ications	Selectable v	alues/items	Factory-preset settings	See page
MOVIE	Graphics	Movie demonstration	All Demo ←	→ Int Demo	Int Demo	9, 52
MO	KeyIn CFM	Key in confirmation	Long ← ℃→ O	→ Short off ₊Ĵ	Long	52
L	Clock Hr	Hour adjustment	1 – 12 (0 – 23)	1 (1:00)	9
CLOCK	Clock Min	Minute adjustment	00 -	- 59	00 (1:00)	9
	24H/12H	24 hours or 12 hours	12Hours	24Hours	12Hours	10
	Scroll	Scroll mode	Once ←	→ Auto off ↓	Once	52
	Dimmer	Dimmer mode	Auto Time Set	↔ Off ↔ On ↔	Auto	54
play)	From– To ^{*1}	Dimmer time setting	Any time –	- Any time	6PM – 7AM	54
DISP (display)	Contrast	Contrast	1 – 10		5	52
DISP	LCD Type	Display type	l .	→ Negative uto ↓	Auto	52
	Font Type	Font type	1	2	1	52
	Тад	Tag display	Off	On	On	52
	NTSC/PAL	Video system	NTSC	PAL	PAL	53
	Веер	Key-touch tone	Off	On	On	53
AUDIO	Ext Input ^{*2}	External component	Changer	Line In	Changer	53
	Rear SPK	Rear speaker output	Off	On	On	31
	Telephone	Telephone muting	Muting1 ← ↑ Of		Off	53
	All SRC	Selected source	See page 55 for details		Every	55
 _	User	User color selection	Day	Night	Day	56
COLOR	R	Red	00 – 11		Day: 07/Night: 05	56
	G	Green	00 – 11		Day: 07/Night: 05	56
	В	Blue	00 – 11		Day: 07/Night: 05	56

*1 Displayed only when "Dimmer" is set to "Time Set."
*2 Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, and CD.



To set the movie demonstration—Graphics

When shipped from the factory, the movie has been activated.

- All Demo: If no operation is done for about 20 seconds, the movie demonstration starts automatically.
- Int Demo: If no operation is done for about 20 seconds, the movie demonstration and playback source indication appears alternately on the display.
- Off: Cancels the movie demonstration.

To select the source animation on the display—KeyIn CFM

When changing the source, the display shows the source animation. You can select the source animation on the display according to your preference.

- Long: A long source animation appears.
- Short: A short source animation appears.
- Off: Cancels the source animation.

To select the scroll mode—Scroll

You can select the scroll mode for the disc information (when the entire text cannot be shown at once).

- Once: Scrolls only once.
- Auto: Repeats the scroll (in 5-second intervals).
- Off: Cancels scroll mode.

Note:

Even if the scroll mode is set to "Off," you can scroll the display by pressing DISP (D) for more than one second.

To adjust the display contrast level —Contrast

You can adjust the display contrast level among 1 to 10.

Adjust it to make the display indications clear and legible.

To select the display illumination pattern —LCD Type

You can select the display illumination patterns according to your preference.

- Auto: Positive pattern will be selected during the day time (depending on the "Dimmer" setting); on the other hand, negative pattern will be used during the night time (depending on the "Dimmer" setting).
- Positive: Positive (normal) pattern of the display.
- Negative: Negative pattern of the display.

To select the font on the display —Font Type

You can change the font types used on the display. Select either "1" or "2" according to your preference.

To turn the tag display on or off—Tag

An MP3 file can contain file information called "ID3 Tag" where its album name, performer, track title, etc. are recorded.

There are two versions–ID3v1 (ID3 Tag version 1) and ID3v2 (ID3 Tag version 2). Only ID3v1 can be shown.

- On: Turns on the ID3 tag display while playing MP3 files.
 - If an MP3 file does not have ID3 tags, folder name and file name appear.

Note:

If you change the setting from "Off" to "On" while playing an MP3 file, the tag display will be activated when the next file starts playing.

 Off: Turns off the ID3 tag display while playing MP3 files. (Only the folder name and file name can be shown.)



To select a proper video system —NTSC/PAL

Select the appropriate video system to match it to the connected monitor.

- NTSC: Select when connecting an NTSC monitor.
- PAL: Select when connecting a PAL monitor.

To turn on/off the key-touch tone—Beep

You can deactivate the key-touch tone if you do not want it to beep each time you press a button.

- On: Activates the key-touch tone.
- Off: Deactivates the key-touch tone.

To select the external component to use —Ext Input

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied).

To use the external component as the playback source through this unit, you need to select which component—CD changer or external component—to use.

- Changer: To use the CD changer.
- Line In: To use the external component other than CD changer.

Note:

For connecting the Line Input Adapter KS-U57 and the external component, refer to the Installation/ Connection Manual (separate volume).

To select the telephone muting— Telephone

This mode is used when a cellular phone system is connected. Depending on the phone system used, select either "Muting1" or "Muting2," whichever mutes the sounds from this unit.

- Muting1: Selects this if this setting can mute the sounds when using the cellular phone.
- Muting2: Selects this if this setting can mute the sounds when using the cellular phone.
- Off: Cancels the telephone muting.

You can use the following table to keep memo of your own PSM settings.

					_
NE VIE	Graphics				
CLOCK MOVIE	KeyIn CFM				
X	Clock Hr				
0 O	Clock Min				
ΰ	24H/12H				
	Scroll				
	Dimmer				
ay)	From-To				
lispl	Contrast				
DISP (display)	LCD Type				
DIS	Font Type				
	Тад				
	NTSC/PAL				
	Веер				
AUDIO	Rear SPK				
AU	Ext Input				
	Telephone				
	All SRC				
	CD				
	Changer				
RO-	Line in				
COLOR	FM				
	АМ				
	User Day	R	G	В	
	User Night	R	G	В	



Selecting the dimmer mode

You can dim the display at night automatically or as you set the timer.

When shipped from the factory, Auto Dimmer mode is activated.

Note:

Auto Dimmer supplied with this unit may not work correctly on some vehicles, particularly on those having a control dial for dimming. In this case, select any setting other than "Auto."

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: See pages 51.)



2 Press number button 3 to select "DISP"—Display category of the PSM settings.



3 Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ to select "Dimmer."



Dimmer	8
Auto	Ð
	वनमनस

4 Set the dimmer mode to your preference.



- Auto: Activates Auto Dimmer. When you turn on the car head lights, the display automatically dims.
 - Off: Cancels Auto Dimmer.
 - On: Always dims the display.
- Time Set: Used to set the timer for the dimmer function.

Note:

Selecting "Auto" or "Time Set" may change the display pattern to the "Negative" or "Positive" pattern if "LCD Type" is set to "Auto."

- If you select "Time Set," go to the following steps to set the timer.
- If you select any setting other than "Time Set," go to step **7** to finish the setting.
- **5** Select "From– To" to set the timer for the dimmer mode.



6 Set the timer.

- 1 Turn the control dial to select the start time.
- 2 Press ►► A once.
- 3 Turn the control dial to select the end time.

7 Finish the setting.





Changing the display color

You can set the display color using the PSM control. You can select your favorite color for each source (or for all sources).

You can also create your own colors, and set them as the display color.

Setting the desired color for each source

Once you have set the color for each source (or for all sources), the display illuminates in the selected color when the source is selected.

Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: See pages 51.)

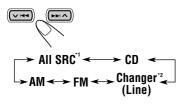


2 Press number button 6 to select "COLOR"—Color category of the PSM settings.



The "All SRC" setting screen appears on the display.

3 Select the source—All SRC, CD, Changer (Line), FM, or AM—that you want to set the display color for.



- *1 When you select "All SRC," the same color will be used for all sources.
- *2 Either component which is selected in the "Ext Input" setting appears.
- Select the display color.



As you turn the control dial, the colors change as follows:

Every*1 \square Aqua \square Sky \square Sea \square Leaves \square Grass \square Red \square Rose \square Amber \square Honey \square Violet \square Cotton \square Snow \square User*2 \square (back to the beginning)

- *1 When you select "Every," the color changes every 2 seconds (changing to every color listed above except "User").
- *2 When you select "User," the user-edited colors—"Day" and "Night" will be applied. (See page 56.)
- **5** Repeat steps **3** and **4** to select the color for each source (except when selecting "All SRC" in step **3**).
 - If you want to apply different colors to the different sources, select any source other than "All SRC" before finish the setting.
 - Finish the setting.





Creating your own color-User

You can create your own colors—"Day" and "Night," and select them as the display color for any desired source.

- Day: Can be used as your user color during the day time (while the headlights are turned off), or as set by the timer— "From – To."
- Night: Can be used as your user color during the night time (while the headlights are turned on), or as set by the timer— "From – To."
- Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display. (PSM: See pages 51.)



2 Press number button 6 to select "COLOR"—Color category of the PSM settings.



The source/color selecting screen appears on the display.

3 Select "User" as a color.



The user color will be applied to the currently selected source (the one shown on the upper portion of the display. In this example "All SRC").

To select which source to apply your user color to, select the target source first by pressing ▲ (up) or ▼ (down), before selecting "User" in this step.

4 Select the user color adjustment screen.



One of the user color adjustment screens appears.

"User Day" or "User Night" is shown on the left side of the display.



5 Select either "Day" or "Night" to make an adjustment for.



6 Adjust the selected user color.

 Press >> A or > I <= to select one of three primary colors—"R" (red), "G" (green), and "B" (blue).



 Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) to adjust the selected primary color.

You can adjust within the range of 00 to 11.

- 3) Repeat steps 1) and 2) to adjust the other primary colors.
- 7 Repeat steps 5 and 6 to adjust the other user colors—"Day" or "Night."

8 Finish the setting.





You can assign names to station frequencies, CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer), and the external component.

After assigning a name, it will appears on the display when you select the source.

Sources	Maximum number of characters
Station frequencies	Up to 10 characters (up to 30 station frequencies including both FM and AM)
CDs*	Up to 32 characters (up to 40 discs)
External component	Up to 8 characters

* You can assign a name only to conventional CDs.

Select a source you want to assign a name to.

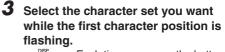
When you select a source, the power automatically comes on.

2 While pressing DISP (D), press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds.



	Disc Name	
TRK- 15 00'00"		C 21
····· FLAT	ଆହ A⇒a→Ø	⊈ A→B D

Ex.: When you select "DISC" as the source



Each time you press the button, the character set changes as follows:

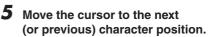
→ A (A – Z: capital) → ā (a – z: small) – Ø (0 – 9: numbers, and symbols)

4 Select a character.

D



• About the available characters, see page 66.





- 6 Repeat steps 3 to 5 until you finish entering the name.
- 7 Finish the procedure while the last selected character is flashing.



To erase entered characters

Insert spaces using the same procedure described above.

Notes:

- When you try to assign a name to the 41st disc or to the 31st station frequency, "Name Full" appears and you cannot enter the text entry mode. In this case, delete unwanted names before assignment.
- When the CD changer is connected, you can assign names to CDs in the CD changer. These names can also be shown on the display if you insert the CDs in this unit.



Detaching the control panel

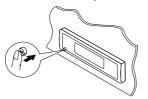
You can detach the control panel when leaving the car.

When detaching or attaching the control panel, be careful not to damage the connectors on the back of the control panel and on the panel holder.

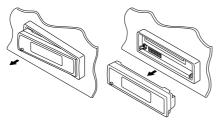
Detaching the control panel

Before detaching the control panel, be sure to turn off the power.

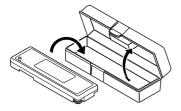
1 Unlock the control panel.



2 Pull the control panel out of the unit.

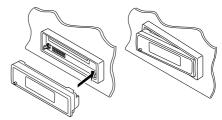


3 Put the detached control panel into the provided case.

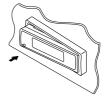


Attaching the control panel

Insert the right side of the control panel into the groove on the panel holder.



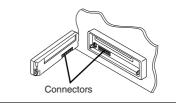
2 Press the left side of the control panel to fix it to the panel holder.



Note on cleaning the connectors:

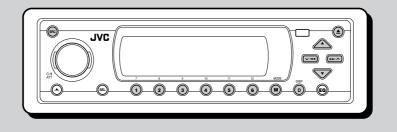
If you frequently detach the control panel, the connectors will deteriorate.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



CD CHANGER OPERATIONS





Operations of this section are explained using the buttons on the control panel unless mentioned otherwise.

We recommend that you use the JVC MP3compatible CD changer with your unit.

By using this CD changer, you can play back your original CD-Rs (Recordable) and CD-RWs (Rewritable) recorded either in audio CD format or in MP3 format.

- You can also connect other CH-X series CD changers (except CH-X99 and CH-X100). However, they are not compatible with MP3 discs, so you cannot play back MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.

Before operating your CD changer:

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- If no discs are in the magazine of the CD changer or the discs are inserted upside down, "No Disc" will flash on the display. If this happens, remove the magazine and position the discs correctly.
- If no magazine is loaded in the CD changer, "No Magazine" flashes on the display. If this happens, insert the magazine in the CD changer.
- If "Reset 1" "Reset 8" flashes on the display, something is wrong with the connection between this unit and the CD changer. If this happens, check the connection and make sure the cords are connected firmly. Then, press the reset button of the CD changer.

Note:

You cannot play back a DVD and a VCD on the CD changer.

Playing discs

Select the CD changer (CD-CH).



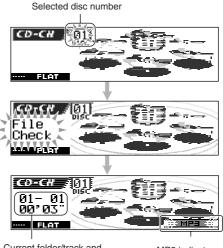
Each time you press the button, the source changes as described on page 8. When you select a source, the power automatically comes on.

Notes:

- You can also use the CH button on the remote controller.
- If you have changed the "Ext Input" setting to "Line In" (see page 53), you cannot select the CD changer.

When the current disc is an MP3 disc:

Playback starts from the first folder of the current disc once file check is completed.

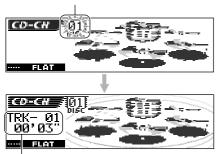


Current folder/track and elapsed playing time

MP3 indicator



Selected disc number



Current track and elapsed playing time

Note:

If you change the source, CD changer play also stops. Next time you select the CD changer as the source, CD changer play starts from where playback has been stopped previously.

To change the display information

While playing back a disc, you can change the disc information shown on the display.



Press DISP (D) repeatedly. Each time you press the button, the display changes.

• For details, see pages 41 and 42.

To go to a particular disc directly

Press the number button corresponding to the disc number to start its playback (while the CD changer is playing).



- To select a disc number from 1 6: Press 1 (7) – 6 (12) briefly.
- To select a disc number from 7 12: Press and hold 1 (7) – 6 (12) for more than one second.

Note:

You can also use the DISC +/- buttons on the remote controller to select a disc.

To fast-forward or reverse the track



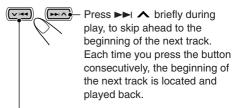
Press and hold \rightarrow , during play, to fast-forward the track.

Press and hold \checkmark I \triangleleft , during play, to reverse the track.

Note:

During this operation on an MP3 disc, you can only hear intermittent sounds. (The elapsed playing time also changes intermittently on the display.)

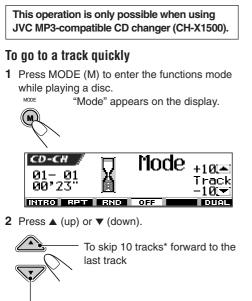
To go to the next or previous tracks



Press ✓ I ← briefly during play, to skip back to the beginning of the current track.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the beginning of the previous track is located and played back.





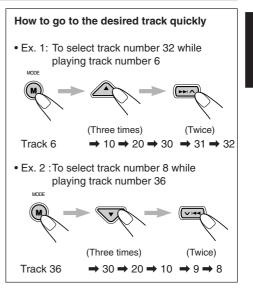
To skip 10 tracks* backward to the first track

* The first time you press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) button, the track skips to the nearest higher or lower track with a track number of an even multiple ten (ex. 10th, 20th, 30th).

Then each time you press the button, you can skip 10 tracks (see "How to go to the desired track quickly" on the right column).

Notes:

- After the last track, the first track will be selected, and vice versa.
- If the current playing disc is an MP3 disc, tracks are skipped within the same folder.



To skip to the next or previous folder (only for MP3 discs)

F F F F F F

Press \blacktriangle (up) while playing an MP3 disc, to go to the next folder.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the next folder is located, and the first track in the folder starts playback.

Press $\mathbf{\nabla}$ (down) while playing an MP3 disc, to go to the previous folder.

Each time you press the button consecutively, the previous folder is located, and the first track in the folder starts playback.

Note:

If the folder does not contain any MP3 tracks, it is skipped.



To select a disc using the disc lists

If you forget what discs are loaded in the CD changer, you can show the disc title list and select a disc in the list shown on the display.

- The display can show only six disc names at a time.
- While playing a disc, press and hold ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) until a disc name list appears on the display.



CD-CH DISC	01	∂ Rock M
Disc 01 POP		🖲 ABC
FLAT	03	⊜No Disc

Selected disc number

Note:

If a disc has a disc title (CD Text) or an assigned disc name, it will be shown on the display. However, if the disc has not been played before, its disc number will appear.

2 Press ▲ (up) or ▼ (down) to show the other disc name list, if necessary.



3 Select the number (1 – 6) for the disc you want to play.



While playing an MP3 disc, you can also show the folder list(s) and track list(s) on the display, then select a folder or track.

1 While playing an MP3 disc, press and hold ▲ (up) or

▼ (down) until a disc name list appears on the display.



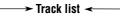
2 Press >> A or > I d to

show a folder list of the current disc or track list of the current folder.



Each time you press the button, lists on the display changes as follows:





Current folder number

CD-CH	DISCO	is−m
01- Folder		9 Behex
FUIGER	₿K-Shi	₿ SLK

Ex.: When folder list is selected

Current track number



Ex.: When track list is selected

Note:

The display can show only six items at a time. You can show the other items on the next lists by pressing \blacktriangle (up) or \blacktriangledown (down).

3 Press the number button for the disc, folder, or track you want to play.





Selecting the playback modes

To play back tracks repeatedly (Repeat Play)

From the remote controller:



Press REPEAT (↔) repeatedly until the Repeat Play mode you want is selected.

On the control panel:

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode during play. "Mode" appears on the display.



2 Press number button 2 repeatedly while "Mode" is still on the display. Each time you press the button, Repeat Play mode changes as follows:

For MP3 discs:

→ Repeat Track → Repeat Folder — Repeat Off ← Repeat Disc ←

For CDs:



Note:

MP3 indicator also lights up if the current playing disc is an MP3 disc.

Mode	Active indicator	Plays repeatedly
Repeat Track	♪ негт indicator lights up.	The current (or specified) track.
Repeat Folder*	indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current (or specified) folder of the current disc.
Repeat Disc	BPT indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current (or specified) disc.

" "Repeat Folder" is only applicable for MP3 disc.

To cancel Repeat Play, select "Repeat Off" by pressing number button 2 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.

To play back tracks at random (Random Play)

From the remote controller:



Press RANDOM (R) repeatedly until the Random Play mode you want is selected.

On the control panel:

 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode during play.
 "Mode" appears on the display.





2 Press number button 3 repeatedly while "Mode" is still on the display. Each time you press the button, Random Play mode changes as follows:



For MP3 discs:

ightarrow Random Folder —> Random Disc —

— Random Off \prec Random All ←

For CDs:



Note:

MP3 indicator also lights up if the current playing disc is an MP3 disc.

Mode	Active indicator	Plays at random
Random Folder*	Indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder and so on.
Random Disc	END indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current (or specified) disc.
Random All	ALL RND indicator lights up.	All tracks of all discs inserted in the magazine.

* "Random Folder" is only applicable for MP3 disc.

To cancel Random Play, select "Random Off" by pressing number button 3 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.

To play back only intros (Intro Scan)

From the remote controller:



Press INTRO (I) repeatedly until the Intro Scan mode you want is selected.

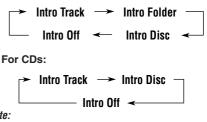
On the control panel:

1 Press MODE (M) to enter the functions mode during play. "Mode" appears on the display.



2 Press number button 1 repeatedly while "Mode" is still on the display. Each time you press the button, Intro Scan mode changes as follows:





Note:

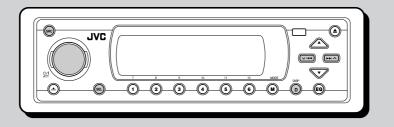
MP3 indicator also lights up if the curr	rent playing
disc is an MP3 disc.	

Mode	Active indicator	Plays the beginnings (15 seconds) of
Intro Track	л тыт indicator lights up.	All tracks of the current disc.
Intro Folder*	indicator lights up.	The first track of every folder of the current disc.
Intro Disc	indicator lights up.	The first tracks of the inserted discs.

* "Intro Folder" is only applicable for MP3 disc.

To cancel Intro Scan, select "Intro Off" by pressing number button 1 repeatedly or press number button 4 in step **2**.

EXTERNAL COMPONENT OPERATIONS



Operations of this section are explained using the buttons on the control panel unless mentioned otherwise.

Playing an external component

You can connect the external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied).

Preparation:

For connecting the Line Input Adapter KS-U57 and the external component, refer to the Installation/ Connection Manual (separate volume).

Before operating the external component,

select the correct external input correctly by following the procedure below.

- See also "Changing the general settings (PSM)" on page 50.
- 1 Press and hold SEL (select) for more than 2 seconds so that one of the PSM items appears on the display.
- 2 Press number button 5 to select "AUDIO"— Audio category of the PSM settings.
- 3 Press ►►I ∧ or ∨ I◄◄ to select "Ext Input"*.
- 4 Turn the control dial clockwise to select "Line In."
- 5 Press SEL (select) to finish the setting.
- For details, see "To select the external component to use—Ext Input" on page 53.
- * Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, and CD.

Select the external component (LINE IN).

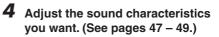


Each time you press the button, the source changes as described on page 8. When you select a source, the power automatically comes on.

LINE IN	
····· FLAT	

- * Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, and CD.
- **2** Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- **3** Adjust the volume.





Note:

You can also change the display pattern by pressing DISP (D) repeatedly.

Sound modes (preset frequency level settings)

The list below shows the preset frequency level settings for each sound mode.

• You can adjust the preset sound modes temporarily. However, your temporary adjustments will be reset when you select another sound mode.

Sound	Preset equalizing values						
Mode	60 Hz	150 Hz	400 Hz	1 kHz	2.4 kHz	6 kHz	12 kHz
Flat	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
Hard Rock	+03	+03	+01	00	00	+02	+01
R & B	+03	+02	+02	00	+01	+01	+03
Рор	00	+02	00	00	+01	+01	+02
Jazz	+03	+02	+01	+01	+01	+03	+02
Dance Music	+04	+02	00	-02	-01	+01	+01
Country	+02	+01	00	00	00	+01	+02
Reggae	+03	00	00	+01	+02	+02	+03
Classic	+02	+03	+01	00	00	+02	00
User 1	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 2	00	00	00	00	00	00	00
User 3	00	00	00	00	00	00	00

Available characters

You can use the following characters to assign names to stations, CDs, and external component. (See page 57.)

Capital letters

Α	В	С	D	Е
F	G	Н	Ι	J
к	L	М	Ν	0
Р	Q	R	S	Т
U	V	W	Х	Υ
Ζ	space			

Small letters

а	b	с	d	е
f	g	h	i	j
k	I	m	n	0
р	q	r	s	t
u	v	w	х	У
z	space			

Numbers and symbols

0	1	2	3	4
5	6	7	8	9
!	"	#	\$	%
&	,	()	*
+	,	-		/
:	;	<	=	>
?	@	_	`	space

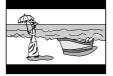
LANGUAGE CODES

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	KA	Georgian	SN	Shona
AB	Abkhazian	KK	Kazakh	SO	Somali
AF	Afrikaans	KL	Greenlandic	SQ	Albanian
AM	Ameharic	KM	Cambodian	SR	Serbian
AR	Arabic	KN	Kannada	SS	Siswati
AS	Assamese	КО	Korean (KOR)	ST	Sesotho
AY	Aymara	KS	Kashmiri	SU	Sundanese
AZ	Azerbaijani	KU	Kurdish	SV	Swedish
BA	Bashkir	KY	Kirghiz	SW	Swahili
BE	Byelorussian	LA	Latin	TA	Tamil
BG	Bulgarian	LN	Lingala	TE	Telugu
BH	Bihari	LO	Laothian	TG	Tajik
BI	Bislama	LT	Lithuanian	TH	Thai
BN	Bengali, Bangla	LV	Latvian, Lettish	TI	Tigrinya
во	Tibetan	MG	Malagasy	ТК	Turkmen
BR	Breton	MI	Maori	TL	Tagalog
CA	Catalan	MK	Macedonian		Setswana
CO	Corsican	ML	Malayalam	то	Tonga
CS	Czech	MN	Mongolian	TR	Turkish
CY	Welsh	мо	Moldavian		
DA	Danish	MR	Marathi	TS	Tsonga Totor
DZ	Bhutani	MS	Malay (MAY)	TT	Tatar
EL	Greek	MT	Maltese	TW	Twi
ΞO	Esperanto	MY	Burmese	UK	Ukrainian
ET	Estonian	NA	Nauru	UR	Urdu
EU	Basque	NE	Nepali	UZ	Uzbek
FA	Persian			VI	Vietnamese
FI	Finnish	NO	Dutch	VO	Volapuk
FJ		-	Norwegian	WO	Wolof
	Fiji		Occitan	XH	Xhosa
FO FY	Faroese	OM	(Afan) Oromo	YO	Yoruba
	Frisian	OR	Oriya	ZU	Zulu
GA	Irish	PA	Panjabi		
GD	Scots Gaelic	PL	Polish		
GL	Galician	PS	Pashto, Pushto		
GN	Guarani	PT	Portuguese		
GU	Gujarati	QU	Quechua		
HA	Hausa	RM	Rhaeto-Romance		
HI	Hindi	RN	Kirundi		
HR	Croatian	RO	Rumanian		
HU	Hungarian	RU	Russian		
HY	Armenian	RW	Kinyarwanda		
IA	Interlingua	SA	Sanskrit		
IE	Interlingue	SD	Sindhi		
IK	Inupiak	SG	Sangho		
IN	Indonesian	SH	Serbo-Croatian		
IS	Icelandic	SI	Singhalese		
IW	Hebrew	SK	Slovak		
JI	Yiddish	SL	Slovenian		
JW	Javanese	SM	Samoan		
		1			



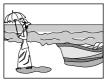
4:3 Letterbox Screen

This is one method for displaying a wide screen picture on a conventional sized (4:3) TV. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen.



4:3 Pan-Scan Screen

This is one method for displaying a wide screen picture on a conventional sized (4:3) TV. While viewing a wide screen picture, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen.



Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a technology developed by Dolby Laboratories that reproduces multi-channel cinema sound in systems equipped with a Dolby Digital multi-channel processor or amplifier. Dolby Digital can deliver from mono up to 5.1 discrete channels of excellent sound quality.

The KD-DV5000 automatically recognizes the Dolby Digital bitstream and provides a downmix suitable for two-channel listening. An additional Dolby Digital decoder or amplifier is required to reproduce the discrete multi-channel sound encoded in many DVDs.

DTS Digital Surround

This is another discrete 5.1 channel digital audio format, available on CD, LD, and DVD software, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc. Compared to Dolby Digital, the audio compression rate is relatively low. This fact allows DTS Digital Surround format to add breadth and depth to the reproduced sounds. As a result, DTS Digital Surround features natural, solid and clear sound.

To reproduce these surround signals, you need to connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with DTS Digital Surround.

ID3 Tag (MP3)

An MP3 file can contain file information called "ID3 Tag" where its album name, performer, track title, etc. are recorded.

There are two versions–ID3v1 (ID3 Tag version 1) and ID3v2 (ID3 Tag version 2). Only ID3v1 can be shown.

Linear PCM

This is a digital recording format that is used for audio CDs.

Playback Control (VCD)

When a VCD has the PBC (Playback Control) function, you can use menu-driven operations and enjoy high-resolution still pictures.

Sampling Frequency, Quantization Bits

When analog signals are converted into digital signals, they are divided into many points and digitized. This dividing method is called "sampling." The sampling frequency indicates how many points one second is divided into – for example, for CD sound, one second is divided into 44100 points since its sampling frequency is 44.1 kHz. On the other hand, the number of quantization bits indicates the volume size used to memorize each divided point.

The larger this number is, the clearer the sound can be reproduced.

<u>]</u>;

TROUBLESHOOTING

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptoms	Causes	Remedies
	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	The volume level is set to the minimum level.	Adjust it to the optimum level.
		Connections are incorrect.	Check the cords and connections.
General	This unit does not work at all.	The built-in microcomputer may have functioned incorrectly due to noise, etc.	Press the reset button on the panel holder after detaching the control panel. (The clock setting and preset stations stored in memory are erased.) (See page 2.)
	 "Panel Connect Error" appears on the display. 	The control panel is not attach correctly and firmly.	Remove the control panel, wipe the connectors, then attach it again. (See page 58.)
	 No sound comes out of the 2nd AUDIO OUT plug. 	Dual Zone is not activated	Activate Dual Zone.
W	 SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory) automatic preset does not work. 	Signals are too weak.	Store stations manually.
FM/AM	 Static noise while listening to the radio. 	The antenna is not connected firmly.	Connect the antenna firmly.
	AM band cannot be selected.	Dual Zone is activated.	Deactivate Dual Zone.
	 Disc cannot be played back. 	Disc is inserted upside down.	Insert the disc correctly.
ack	 CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back. Tracks on the CD-R/ CD-RW cannot be skipped. 	CD-R/CD-RW is not finalized.	 Insert a finalized CD-R/ CD-RW. Finalize the CD-R/CD-RW with the component which you used for recording.
Disc Playback	Disc cannot be ejected.	Disc is locked.	Unlock the disc. (See page 41.)
Disc	 [00'00"] appears on the display, but playback does not start. 	You are playing a Mixed-CD. (Playback stops at the beginning of the first track.)	Skip to the following tracks. Playback start with the selected track. (For details about the Mixed-CD, refer to "A Guide to MP3" (separate volume).
	Disc cannot be recognized.	The CD player may function incorrectly.	While holding SRC, press SEL for more than 2 seconds to eject the disc.

	Symptoms	Causes	Remedies
	Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	You are driving on rough roads.	Stop playback while driving on rough roads.
	distorted.	Disc is scratched.	Change the disc.
		Connections are incorrect.	Check the cords and connections.
	 "No Disc" flashes on the display. 	No disc in the loading slot.	Insert a disc into the loading slot.
		Disc is inserted incorrectly.	Insert the disc correctly.
	No playback picture (DVD, VCD) appears on the monitor.	Parking brake wire is not connected.	Connect the wire (see Installation/Connection Manual).
	 No picture appears on the monitor at all. 	The video cord is not connected correctly.	Connect the video cord correctly
		An incorrect input has been selected on the TV or monitor.	Select a correct input on the TV or monitor.
Disc Playback	• The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the screen.	"4:3 PS" is selected when viewing on a conventional TV (aspect ratio 4:3).	Select "4:3 LB." (See page 45.)
Disc F	 Disc can be neither played back nor ejected. 	The built-in microcomputer may function incorrectly due to noise, etc.	Turn off the power, then turn it on again.
	 MP3 disc is skipped or cannot be played back. 	MP3 files do not have the extension code—mp3 in their file names.	Add the extension code —mp3 to their file names.
		MP3 files are not recorded in a format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet.	Change the disc. (Record MP3 files using a compliant application.)
	 Noise is generated while playing an MP3 disc. 	The file played back is not an MP3 file (although it has the extension code—mp3).	Skip to another file or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code—mp3 to non- MP3 files.)
	 MP3 files cannot be played back in the order you have intended them to play. 	Playback order is determined when the files are recorded.	
	 Elapsed playing time is not correct for an MP3 disc. 	This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the files are recorded on the disc.	

Symptoms	Causes	Remedies	
"No Disc" flashes on the	No disc is in the magazine.	Insert discs into the magazine.	
display.	Discs are inserted upside down.	Insert discs correctly.	
	Discs are unplayable.	Insert playable discs.	
	The current disc does not contain any MP3 files.	Insert a disc that contains MP3 files.	
 "No Magazine" flashes on the display. 	No magazine is loaded in the CD changer.	Insert the magazine.	er
"Reset 8" flashes on the display.	This unit is not connected to the CD changer correctly.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button on the CD changer.	CD Changer
• "Reset 1" – "Reset 7" flashes on the display.		Press the reset button on the CD changer.	
The CD changer does not work at all.	The built-in microcomputer may function incorrectly due to noise, etc.	Press the reset button on the panel holder after detaching the control panel. (The clock setting and preset stations stored in memory are erased.) (See page 2.)	

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

They differ depending on the "DIGITAL AUDIO OUT" setting on the Setup Menu.

\langle	DIGITAL AUDIO OUT	Output Signals		
Pla	yback Disc	PCM ONLY	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	STREAM/PCM
DVD 48 kHz, 16/20/24 bit Linear PCM			48 kHz, 16 bit Linear PCM *	
	96 kHz, Linear PCM	None		
	with Dolby Digital	48 kHz, 16 bit Linear PCM	Dolby Digital bitstream	
	with DTS	48 kHz, 16 bit Linear PCM		DTS bitstream
	with MPEG Multichannel	48 kHz, 16 bi	t Linear PCM	MPEG bitstream
Vide	o CD, Audio CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bit Linear PCM		
Audi	o CD with DTS	44.1 kHz, 16 bit Linear PCM DTS bitstream		DTS bitstream
MP3		Linear PCM		

* While playing some DVDs, digital signals may be emitted at 20 bits or 24 bits (at their original bit rate) through the DIGITAL OUT terminal if the discs are not copy-protected.



Handling discs

This unit has been designed to reproduce DVD-Videos, VCDs, CDs, CD-Rs (Recordable), CD-RWs (Rewritable), and CD Texts.

This unit is also compatible with MP3 discs.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc

from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.



Center holder

• Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

• Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub \mathcal{F} the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car. Should this occur, the CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

When playing a CD-R or CD-RW

Before playing back CD-Rs or CD-RWs, read their instructions or cautions carefully.

- Use only "finalized" CD-Rs or CD-RWs.
- Some CD-Rs or CD-RWs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, and for the following reasons:
 - Discs are dirty or scratched.
 - Moisture condensation on the lens inside the unit.
 - The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
- CD-RWs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of CD-RWs is lower than that of regular CDs.
- CD-Rs or CD-RWs are susceptible to high temperatures or high humidity, so do not leave them inside your car.
- Do not use the following CD-Rs or CD-RWs:
 - Discs with stickers, labels, or a protective seal stuck to the surface.
 - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to discs. For example,

- Stickers or labels may shrink and warp a disc.
- Stickers or labels may peel off so discs cannot be ejected.
- Print on discs may get sticky.

Read instructions or cautions about labels and printable discs carefully.

CAUTIONS:

- Do not insert any disc of unusual shape—like a heart or flower; otherwise, it will cause a malfunction.
- Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or any heat source or place them in a place subject to high temperature and humidity. Do not leave them in a car.
- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.







Sticker residue



ENGLISH

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output: Front: 50 W per channel Rear: 50 W per channel Continuous Power Output (RMS): Front: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion. Rear: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion. Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance) Equalizer Control Range: Frequencies: 60 Hz, 150 Hz, 400 Hz, 1 kHz, 2.4 kHz, 6 kHz, 12 kHz Level: ±10 dB Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB Audio output level: Analog (2nd AUDIO OUT): 6 mW (at 16 Ω) Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical): Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm Line-Out Level/Impedance: 2.0 V/20 k Ω load (full scale) Output Impedance: 1 kΩ Color system: PAL/NTSC Video output (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range: FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz AM: 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω) 50 dB Quieting Sensitivity: 16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω) Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz Stereo Separation: 35 dB Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[AM Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 µV Selectivity: 35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)			
Number of channels: 2 channels (stereo)			
Frequency Response:			
DVD, fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz			
DVD, fs=96 kHz: 16 Hz to 44 000 Hz			
VCD, CD, MP3: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz			
Dynamic Range: 96 dB			
Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 98 dB			
Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit			
MP3 recording format: MPEG 1/2 Audio Layer 3			
Max. Bit rate: 320 Kbps			
·			

GENERAL

Power Requirement: Operating Voltage: DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance) Grounding System: Negative ground Allowable Operating Temperature: 0°C to +40°C Dimensions (W × H × D): Installation Size (approx.): 182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm Panel Size (approx.): 188 mm × 58 mm × 12 mm Mass (approx.): 1.7 kg (excluding accessories)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

About mistracking:

Mistracking may result from driving on extremely rough roads. This does not damage the unit and the disc, but will be annoying. We recommend that you stop disc play while driving on such rough roads.





(≦) EN, CH, KO, TH
© 2003 VICTOR COMPANY OF JAPAN, LIMITED

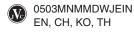




การติดตั้ง/คู่มือการติดตั้ง

[U]

LVT1055-003A



ENGLISH

• This unit is designed to operate on 12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit in locations where;
- it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
- it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.

- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
- This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

- 中文
- 此機組被設計以 12 V DC 負地電氣系統操作。

- 切勿將機器安裝在下述位置;
- 妨礙駕駛和操縱桿操作的位置,因為安裝在該 位置可能引發交通事故。
- 妨礙如氣袋等安全裝置操作的位置,因為安裝 在該位置可能引發交通事故。
- 妨礙視野的位置。
- 切勿在駕駛汽車的過程中操作任何機器,因為此 舉可能引發交通事故。
- 在駕駛過程中司機不可以觀看監視器。
 若司機在駕駛過程中觀看監視器,可能因為注意 力不集中而導致意外事故的發生。
- 在駕駛過程中司機不可以戴頭戴耳機。
- 在駕駛過程中隔絕外界聲音非常危險。
- 在駕駛過程中若需要操作機器,切記要密切注意 前方,否則可能招致車禍。
- 若手剎車未嚙合, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING."(在駕駛過程中 司機不可以觀看監視器。)字樣會在監視器上出 現,並且無法播出圖像。
- 僅當手剎車導線與汽車內置的手剎車系統相連接時此警告信息才會出現(參閱安裝/連接手冊)。

- 한국어
- 이 장치는 12 V DC, 네거티브 접지 전기 시스 템에서만 사용하도록 설계되어 있습니다.

경고

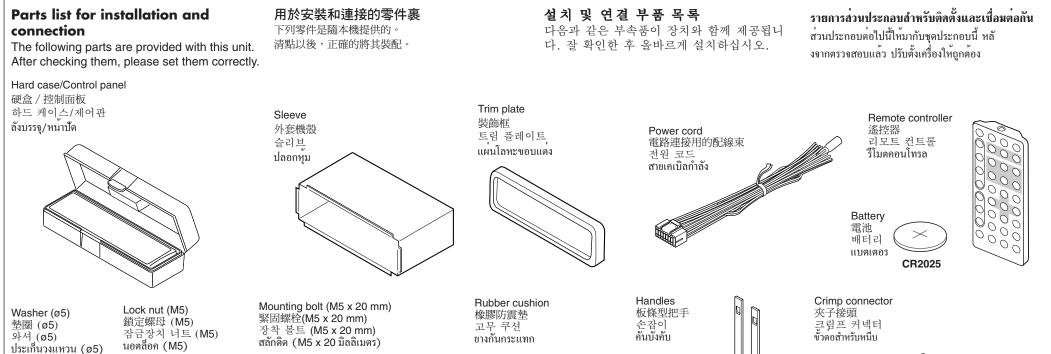
- 다음과 같은 곳에는 장치를 설치하지 마십시 오.
- 자동차 핸들과 기어샤프트 레버의 원활한 작 동을 방해하여 교통 사고를 유발할 가능성이 있는 곳.
- 에어백과 같은 안전 장치의 작동을 방해하여 치명적인 교통 사고를 유발할 가능성이 있는 곳.
- 운전자의 시야를 가릴 수 있는 곳.
- 교통 사고의 위험이 있으니 핸들 조작 중에 장치를 작동하지 마십시오.
- 운전 중에 모니터를 보지 마십시오.
 운전 중에 모니터를 보면 주의가 산만해져 사고 위험이 있습니다.
- 운전 중에는 헤드폰을 사용하지 마십시오.
 운전 중에 외부의 소리를 차단하는 것은 위험 합니다.
- 운전 중에 장치를 작동해야 하는 경우 전방을 잘 살피십시오. 그렇지 않으면 교통 사고가 발생할 수 있습니다.
- 주차 브레이크가 걸리지 않으면 모니터에 "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING."표시되고 재생 화상이 나타나 지 않습니다.
- 이러한 경고는 자동차에 내장된 제동 시스템
 에 주차 브레이크 배선이 연결되어 있을 때만
 나타납니다(설치/연결 설명서 참조).

ไทย

 เกรื่องนี้ใด้รับการออกแบบสำหรับใช้งานกับระบบไฟกระ แสตรงที่ต่อสายดินเป็นขั้วลบขนาด 12 โวล์ท

คำเตือน

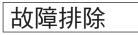
- อย่าติดตั้งเกรื่องในตำแหน่งที
- อาจกิดขวางการทำงานของพวงมาลัยและกันเกียร์ เพราะ
 อาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัตเหตุขึ้
- อาจกีดขวางการทำงานของอุปกรณ์ป้องกันควาปลอดภัย เช่น แอร์แบค เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอันตรายร้ายแรงถึงชีวิตขึ้นได้
- อาจกึดขวางสายตา
- อย่าใช้งานขณะขับขี่ เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุขึ้นได้
 ผู้ขับต้องไม่มองที่จอมอนิเตอร์ขณะขับขี่ ถ้าผู้ขั
- สูงบทองเมมองทงอมอนเพองขนะ บบง เกลูง บมองที่จอมอนิเตอร์ขณะขับขี่ อาจนำไปสู่กวามประมาท และ เป็นสาเหตุให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุขึ้นได
- ผู้ขับต้องไม่ใส่หูพึ่งขณะขับขี่เพราะการปิดหูไม่รับพึงเสียง จากภายนอกอาจก่อให้เกิดอันตรายขึ้นได้
- ถ้าจำเป็นต้องใช้เกรื่องขณะขับขี่ ขอให้ดูทางข้างหน้าให้ดีมิฉะ นั้นอาจเกิดอุบัติเหตุขึ้นได้
- ถ้าไม่ได้ขึ้นเบรกมือไว้ จอมอนิเตอร์จะแสดงข้อความ "ผู้ขั บต้องไม่ดูที่จอมอนิเตอร์ขณะขับขี่ "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." จะ ปรากฏขึ้นบนหน้าจอ และเครื่องจะไม่เล่น
- คำเตือนนี้จะปรากฏขึ้นเฉพาะเมื่อค่อสายเบรกกับระ
 บบเบรกในรถยนต์ไว้เท่านั้น (ดูกู่มือการติดตั้ง/ต่อสาย)



TROUBLESHOOTING

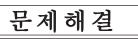
The fuse blows.

- * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- Power cannot be turned on.
- * Is the yellow lead connected?
- No sound from the speakers.
- * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- Sound is distorted.
- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "--" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- Unit becomes hot.
- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "--" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?



• 保險絲燒斷。

- * 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否連接正確?
- 電源不能接通。
- * 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上?
- 揚聲器沒有聲音。
- * 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路?
- 聲音失真。
- * 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地?
- * 檢查揚聲器的左(L)、右(R)端子的負極 (-)是否共同接地?
- 本機發熱。
- * 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地?
- * 檢查揚聲器的左(L)、右(R)端子的負極
 (-)是否共同接地?



• 퓨즈가 끊어집니다.

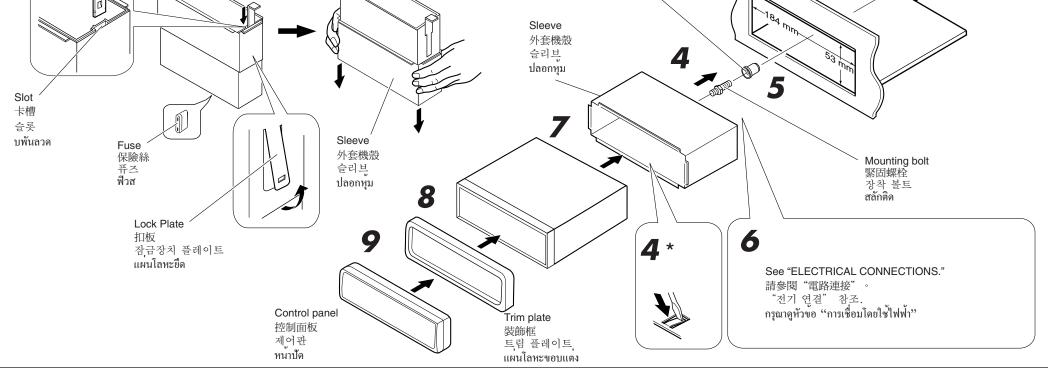
- * 빨간색 및 검정색 도선이 올바로 연결되어 있 습니까?
- 전원이 들어오지 않습니다.
- * 노란색 도선이 연결되어 있습니까?
- 스피커에서 소리가 나지 않습니다.
- * 스피커 출력 도선이 단락되지 않았습니까?
- 소리가 정확한 음을 내지 못합니다.
- * 스피커 출력 도선이 접지되어 있습니까?
- * 왼쪽/오른쪽 스피커의 "-" 단자가 같이 접지되어 있습니까?
- 장치가 과열됩니다.
- * 스피커 출력 도선이 접지되어 있습니까?
- * 왼쪽/오른쪽 스피커의 "-" 단자가 같이 접지 되어 있습니까?

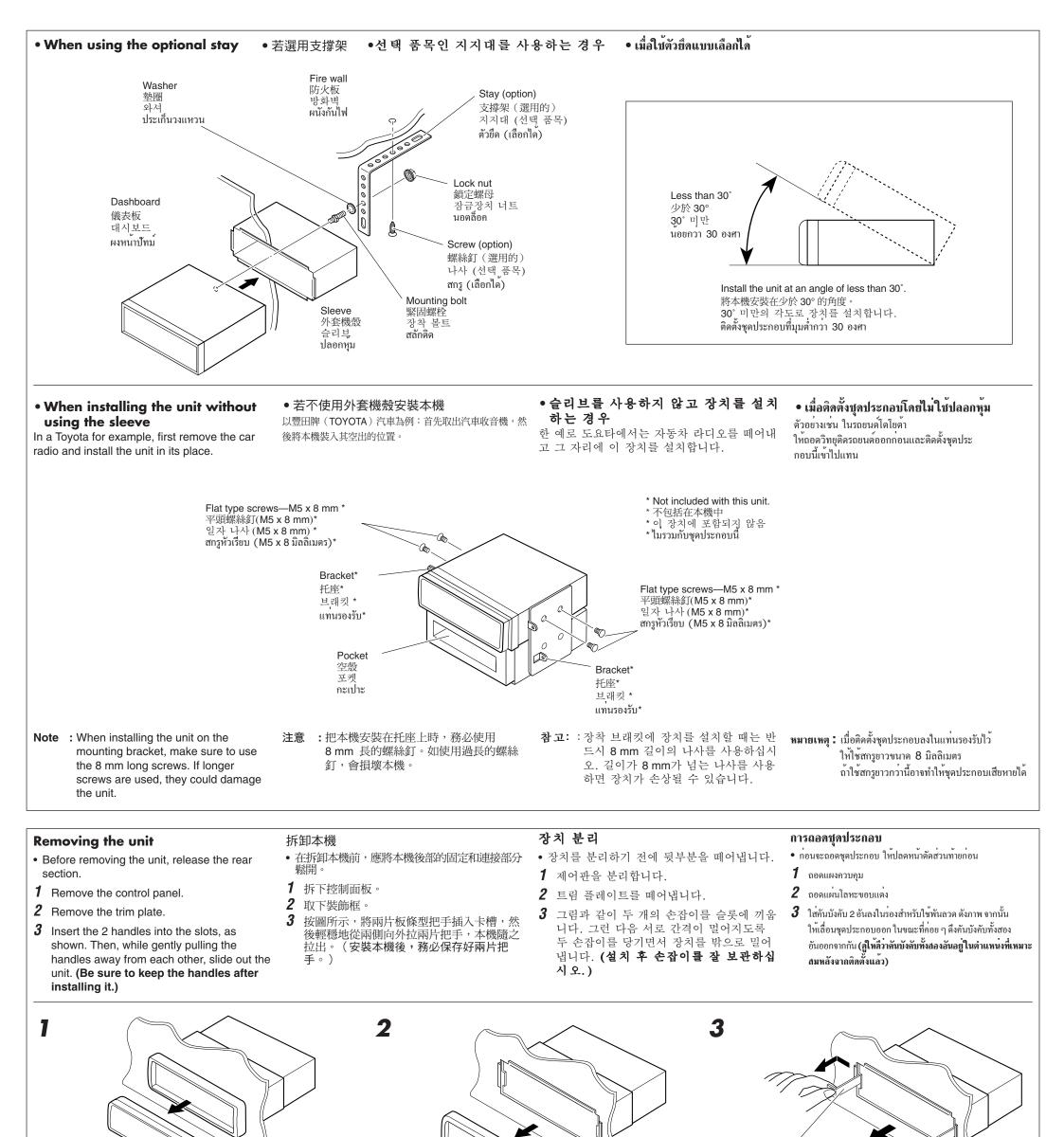
การตรวจสอบปัญหาบัดข้อง

• ฟิวส์ขาด

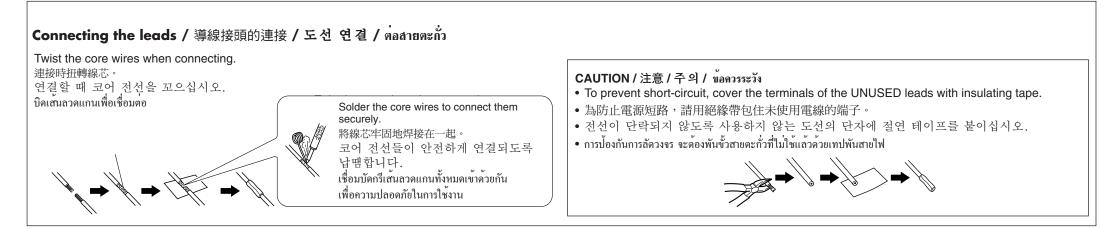
- * มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีดำและสีแดงอย่างถูกต้องหรือไม
- ไม่สามุารถเปิดเครื่องได้
- * มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีเหลืองหรือไม่
- ไม่มีเสียงอุอกจากลำโพง
- * สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือไม่
- เสียงเพื้ยนุ
- * สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่ * สายขั้วลบ ของลำโพงด้านซ้ายและขวาต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่ • **ชดประกอบร้อนขึ้น**
- บุลประกอบรอนขน
- * สายตุะกั่วที่ออกทางลำโพงตุอลงดินหรือไม
- * สายขั้วลบ ของลำโพงด้านซ้ายและขวาต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)	安裝(裝設、固定在儀 表板内)	설치(계기판 장착 형)	การติดตั้ง (การประกอบแผงหน้าปัทม ์เ ข้า)
• The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.	 下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。然而,您 應當做些適當的調整,以便適應您自己的汽 車。如果您有問題,或需要有關配套元件的資 料,請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應 公司詢問。 	 다음 그림은 가장 일반적인 설치 방법을 보 여줍니다. 그러나 자동차에 따라 몇 가지 조 정이 필요합니다. 설치 키트에 대해 질문이 있거나 정보가 필요하면 JVC 자동차 판매점 이나 키트 공급업체에 문의하십시오. 	 ภาพตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้แสดงถึงการติดตั้งแบบทั่วไป อย่างไรก็ตาม คุณกวรปรับแต่งให้เหมาะสมกับรถของคุณเอง หากคุณมีปั ญหาหรือต้องการข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับชุดติดตั้ง กรุณาปรึกษากั บผู้ขายเกรื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC ของท่านหรือบริษั ทที่จำหน่ายชุดติดตั้งนี้
 Before mounting: Press L (control panel if already attached. * When shipped from the factory, the control panel is packed in the hard case. Remove the trim plate. Remove the sleeve after disengaging the sleeve locks. (1) Stand the unit. Note: When you stand the unit, be careful not to damage the fuse on the rear. (2) Insert the 2 handles between the unit and the sleeve, as illustrated, to disengage the sleeve locks. (3) Remove the sleeve. Note: Be sure to keep the handles for future use after installing the unit. 4 Install the sleeve into the dashboard. * After the sleeve is correctly installed into the dashboard, bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place, as illustrated. 5 Fix the mounting bolt to the rear of the unit's body and place the rubber cushion over the end of the bolt. 6 Do the required electrical connections. 7 Slide the unit into the sleeve until it is locked. 8 Attach the trim plate. 9 Attach the control panel. 	 1 裝設之前:如果控制面板已經裝上,按下 山(控制面板解脫按鈕),拆脫控制面板。 *當控制面板從工廠裝運時,它是包裝在硬盒 中的。 2 取下裝飾框。 3 解開扣板,取下本機的外套機殼。 ① 將本機豎起。 注意:您豎起本機時,小心不要損壞底部 的保險絲。 ② 按圖所示,在本機和外套機殼之間插入兩 片板條型的把手,解開外套機殼扣板。 ③ 取下外套機殼。 注意:安裝本機後,務必保存好兩片把 手,以備將來使用。 4 將外套機殼裝入儀表板內。 * 在外套機殼準確地裝入儀表板之後,按圖所 示,彎曲機殼的突舌,把外套機牢固在儀表 板內。 5 將緊固螺栓旋緊在本機機體上,並將橡膠防震 墊套在緊固螺栓的尾部。 6 進行所需的電路連接。 7 將本機滑入外套機殼,直到扣板鎖住為止。 8 裝上裝飾框。 9 裝上控制面板。 	 1 장착하기 전에: 제어판을 이미 부착하였으 면 스 (제어판 해제 단추)를 눌러 제어판 을 분리합니다. * 제어판은 공장에서 하드 케이스에 포장된 상태로 출고됩니다. 2 트림 플레이트를 분리합니다. 3 슬리브 잠금장치를 푼 후 슬리브를 분리합니다. 1 장치를 세울니다. 참고: 장치를 세울 때 뒤쪽의 퓨즈가 손 상되지 않도록 주의하십시오. 2 그림과 같이 장치와 슬리브 사이에 두 개의 손잡이를 끼워 슬리브 자이에 두 개의 손잡이를 끼워 슬리브 자이에 두 가의 손잡이를 끼워 슬리브 자이에 두 가의 손잡이를 한 다. 3 슬리브를 분리합니다. * 슬리브를 대시보드에 설치합니다. * 슬리브를 대시보드에 설치합니다. * 슬리브를 대시보드에 실치합니다. * 슬리브를 대시보드에 올바르게 설치한 후 그림과 같이 해당 탭을 구부려 제자리에 단단히 고정시킵니다. 5 장치 본체 뒤쪽에 장착 볼트를 고정시키고 볼트 끝에 고무 쿠션을 끼웁니다. 6 전기 연결을 합니다. 7 슬리브가 제자리에 끼워질 때까지 장치를 밀 어 넣습니다. 8 트림 플레이트를 끼웁니다. 9 제어판을 장착합니다. 	 กอนประกอบ กคปุ่ม ∟ (ใช้ถอดแผงควบคุมออก) เพื่อออกจากแผงควบคุม * เมื่อผลิดภัณฑ์ถูกส่งออกมาจากโรงงานแผงหน้าปัดจะ บรรรุ1้วในลังแขึง ถอดปลอกหุ้มออกหลังจากปลดที่ลีอกปลอกหุ้มออกแล้ว จับชุดประกอบตั้งขึ้น หมายเหตุ : เมื่อคุณตั้งชุดประกอบขึ้น ระวั งอย่าทำให้ฟิวส์บริเวณส่วนท้ายเสียหาย ใส่หันบังกับ 2 อันระหว่างชุดประกอบกับปลอกหุ้ม (ดังภาพ) เพื่อปลดที่ถือกปลอกหุ้มออกจากมี (จังภาพ) เพื่อปลดที่ถือกปลอกหุ้มออกจากมี (จังภาพ) เพื่อปลดที่ถือกปลอกหุ้มออกจากมี ปลดปลอกหุ้มออก หมายเหตุ : ระมัดระวังให้คันบังกั บสามารถใช้งานได้อไปหลังจากติดตั้งชุดประกอบแล้ว คิดตั้งปลอกหุ้มลงในแผงหน้าบ้าม์ * หลังจากติดตั้งปลอกหุ้มลงในแผงหน้าบ้าม์ * หลังจากติดตั้งปลอกหุ้มองถูกของเล้ว ดัดร่องให้โค้งพอดีที่ปลอกหุ้มองถูกขึดไว้อย่างแน่นหนา (ดังภาพ) คิดสลักประกอบบริเวณด้านหลังโครงของชุดประกอบและ วางยางกันกระแทกไว้บนส่วนปลายของสลัก ต่อสายไฟตามที่กำหนดไว้ทั้งหมด ส่อบนต่าระกอบแต่ง ต่อเข้ากับแผงควบคุม
1 Control panel 控制面板 제어관 개비道布 3 Handle 板條型把手 순잡이	2 e		









ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit. If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

Note:

This unit is designed to operate only on 12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- If noise is a problem... This unit incorporates a noise filter in the power circuit. However, with some vehicles, clicking or other unwanted noise may occur. If this happens, connect the unit's rear ground terminal (see connection diagram) to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords, such as copper braiding or gauge wire. If noise still persists, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- Maximum input of the speakers should be more than 50 W at the rear and 50 W at the front, with an impedance of **4** Ω to **8** Ω .
- · Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.

電路連接

中文

為防止短路,建議在安裝本機之前,斷開電池的 負極,並把所有電路都連接好。如果您不能確定 如何正確地安裝本機,應請合格的技術人員來安 裝。

注意:

本機僅可使用直流 12V、負極接地的電源系統。如 果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統,則需要一個電壓變 換器,可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲 經常燒壞,請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。 • 若出現噪音問題...
- 本機在電源回路帶有一個噪音濾波器。但是,在 퓨즈 교체 시 지정된 정격 퓨즈만 사용하십시 某些車輛上,會出現咯咯聲或其它噪音。如果發 生這類情況,將本機後面的接地端子用短而粗的 導線,如編織銅線或標準電纜,連接到汽車底盤 上(參閱電路接線圖)。如果噪音仍然持續存 在,請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- •後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W 其阻抗為4Ω-8Ω。
- 務必將本機的地線接到汽車底盤上。
- •本機使用後,散熱片會很熱。因此,在移出本機 時,小心不要觸摸散熱片

전기 연결

전선의 단락을 방지하기 위해, 장치를 설치하기 전에 배터리의 음극 단자를 분리한 후 모든 전 기 연결을 수행하십시오. 정확한 장치 설치 방 법을 잘 모르면 공인 기술자에게 설치를 의뢰하 십시오.

참고:

이 장치는 12 V DC, 네거티브 접지 전기 시 스템에서만 사용하도록 설계되었습니다. 차량 에 이 전기 시스템이 없으면 변압기가 필요합니 다. 이러한 변압기는 JVC 자동차 오디오 판매 점에서 구입할 수 있습니다.

- 오. 퓨즈가 자주 끊어지면 JVC 자동차 판매점 에 문의하십시오.
- 소음 문제가 있는 경우...

이 장치의 전원 회로에는 소음 필터가 장착되 어 있습니다.

그러나 일부 차량의 경우 딸각이는 소리와 같 은 시끄러운 소음이 발생할 수도 있습니다. 이러한 경우 동선이나 게이지 와이어와 같은 짧고 굵은 코드를 사용하여 장치의 뒷면 접 지 단자(아래의 연결도 참조)를 자동차의 섀 시에 연결하십시오. 그래도 계속 소음이 들리 면 JVC 자동차 판매점에 문의하십시오.

• 최대 스피커 입력은 뒤쪽과 앞쪽 모두에서 50W 이상이어야 하고 임피던스는 4Ω-8Ω 여야 합니다.

장치는 반드시 자동차 새시에 접지합니 다.

후 방열판은 매우 뜨거우므로 장치를 분 사용 리할 때 방열판에 닿지 않도록 조심하십시오.

การเชื่อมโดยใช้ไฟฟ้า

เพื่อป้องกันไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรเราขอแนะนำให้คุณเอาขั้ว ้ถบแบตเตอรื่ออกก่อนและทำการเชื่อมโคยใช้ไฟฟ้าทุกจุดก่อนที่จะติดตั้ง ชุดประกอบถ้าคุณไม่แน่ใจว่าติดตั้งชุดประกอบนี้ถูกต้องหรือไม่ ให้หาช่างผู้เชี่ยวชาญเป็นผู้ติดตั้ง

หมายเทต :

ไทย

ชุดประกอบนี้ได้รับการออกแบบมาเพื่อใช้งานกับระบบ กระแสไฟฟ้าสายดินขั้วลบกระแสตรง 12 โวลท์

หากรถยนต์ของคุณไม่ได้ใช้ระบบนี้

ต้องใช้เครื่องแปลงกระแส่ไฟช่วย ซึ่งสามารถหาซื้อได้จากร้านขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC

- ใช้พิกัดจำเพาะแทนฟีวส์ หากฟีวส์ขาดบ่อย ให้ปรึกษาร้านงายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC
- หากเสียงมีปัญหา...

ชุดประกอบชุดนี้มีเครื่องกรองเสียงในวงจรกำลัง อย่างไรก็ดีในรถยนต บางคันก็อาจเกิดเสียงที่ไม่พึงปรารถนาขึ้นได้ หากปัญหานี้เกิดขึ้น **ให้ต่อขั้วสายดินด้านหลังของชุดประกอบ** (ดูแผนภูมิการต่อเชื่อมด้าน) เข้ากับ

เชสซิสของรถยนต์โดยใช้สายเคเบิลที่สั้นและหนากว่า เช่น สายไฟเครื่องวัดหรือสายประสานทองแดง เป็นต[้]น หากยัง

- มีเสียงอยู่อีก ให้ปรึกษาร้านขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC
- ระดับอินพุทที่ดังที่สุดของลำโพงควรดังเกินกว่า 50 วัตต์ และ 50 วัตต์ ทั ้งลำโพงหลังและลำโพงหน้า โดยมีอิมพีแดนซ์ในระดับ $4~\Omega-8~\Omega$
- ตรวจสอบให้ดีว่าได้ต่อชุดประกอบชุดนี้ลงในเชสซิสรถยนต์แล้ว

 แผ่นระบายความร้อนจะร้อนมากหลังจากใช้ ระมัดระวังอย่าไป สัมผัสเมื่อถอดชุดประกอบนี้

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.
- Connect the black lead (ground), yellow lead (to car battery, constant 12 V), and red lead (to an accessory terminal) correctly.
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.
- If the speaker wiring in your car is as illustrated in Fig. 1 and Fig. 2 below, DO NOT connect the unit using that original speaker wiring. If you do, the unit will be seriously damaged.

Redo the speaker wiring so that you can connect the unit to the speakers as illustrated in Fig. 3.

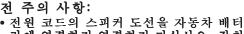
- If the speaker wiring in your car is as illustrated in Fig. 3, you can connect the unit using the original speaker wiring in your car.
- If you are not sure of the speaker wiring of your car, consult your car dealer.

電源和揚聲器接線注意事項:

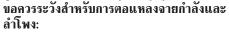
Heat sink 散熱片 방열판

แผ่นระบายความร้อน

- 切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池,否則本機將 會嚴重損壞。
- 正確地連接黑色導線接頭(接地)、黃色導線 接頭(接車裝電池,恆定 12V)和紅色導線接 頭(接至保險絲單元的附屬端子)
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前,檢查您 汽車上的揚聲器線路:
- 如果您汽車上揚聲器線路像圖 1 和圖 2 所 示,不要使用原裝的揚聲器線路。如果使
- 如果您汽車上揚聲器線路像圖 3 所示,可使



- 리에 연결하지 연결하지 마십시오. 장치 가 심하게 손상됩니다. • 검정색 도선 (접지용), 노란색 도선 (자동차
- 배터리에 연결, 항상 12V) 및 빨간색 도선 (액세서리 단자에 연결)을 올바르게 연결합 니다
- 전원 코드의 스피커 도선을 스피커에 연결하 기 전에 자동차의 스피커 배선을 점검합니다. -자동차의 스피커 배선이 아래 그림 1
- 그림 2와 같으면 현재의 스피커 배선 사용하여 장치를 연결하지 마십시오. 장 을 치가 심하게 손상됩니다
- 그림 3과 같이 스피커에 장치가 연결될 수 있도록 스피커 배선을 다시 합니다. -자동차의 스피커 배선이 그림 2과 같으
- 면 자동차에 있는 스피커 배선을 사용하여 장치를 연결할 수 있습니다.
- -자동차의 스피커 배선에 대해 잘 모르면 자 동차 판매점에 문의하십시오.

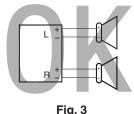


- อย่าต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับแบตเตอรึ่รถยนต์ มิฉะนั ้นชุดประกอบจะได้รับความเสียหายมาก
- ต่อสายตะกั่วแต่ละสีให้ถูกต้อง : สีดำ (สายดิน), สีเหลือง (เข้าก ับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ให้มีก่ำลังคงที่ 12 โวลท์) และสีแดง (เข้ากับขั้วส่วนประกอบ)
- ก่อนที่จะต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับลำโพง ให้ตรวจสอบการเดินสายไฟลำโพงในรถของคุณให้เรียบร้อยเสียก่อน
- หากการเดินสายไฟลำโพงในรถของคุณเป็นเหมือนในรูปภาพที่
- 1 และรูปภาพที่ 2 ดังข้างล่างนี้ อย่าต่อชุดประกอบที่ใช้การเดินสายไฟลำโพงแบบดั้งเดิมนั้น มิฉะ

นั้นชุดประกอบจะใค้รับความเสียหายมาก

ให้จัดการเดินสายไฟลำโพงใหม่ เพื่อกุณจะสามารถต่อ ชุดประ กอบเข้ากับลำโพงตามรูปภาพที่ 3 ได้

- หากการเดินสายไฟล่าโพงในรถของคุณเป็นเหมือนในรูปภาพที่ 3 คุณสามารถต่อชุดประ
- กอบที่ใช้การเดินสายไฟลำโพงแบบดั้งเดิมในรถของกุณได้เลย — หากคุณไม่แน่ใจว่าการเดินสายไฟลำโพงในรถของคุณเป็นแบบใด
- ให้ปรึกษาผู้ขายรถยนต์ของคุณ



About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

由背面終端所發出的聲音 自模擬端子(揚聲器輸出 /LINE OUT/2nd

Fig. 1

리어 단자에서 재현되는 사운드에 대하여 아날로그 터미널(스피커 출력/LINE OUT

Fig. 2

Fig. 3

เกี่ยวกับเสียงที่สร้างขึ้นใหม่ผ่านขั้วต่อด้านหลัง ้ผ่านขั้วต่อแบบอนาล็อก (Speaker out/LINE OUT/2nd

- 用,本機將嚴重損壞。
- 要重新連接揚聲器線路,可按圖3所示,把 本機與揚聲器相連接
- 用原裝的揚聲器線路與本機相連接
- 如果您不能確定您汽車上揚聲器線路,請向 您的汽車分銷商詢問

전원 공급장치 및 스피커 연결 시 안 전 주의 사항:

· Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT/2nd AUDIOOUT):

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—ANALOG DOWN MIX: see page 46 of the Instructions)

Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*, DTS**, MPEG Multichannel) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 71 of the Instructions.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multichannel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" to the correct value. (See page 46 of the Instructions)

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby" and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- "DTS" and "DTS Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

AUDIO OUT) :

發出 2 聲道訊號。

在播放多聲道格式編碼的碟片時,多聲道訊號 被進行下行混合。

- (音頻—模擬下行混合):參使用說明書的閱 第46頁)
- 自 DIGITAL OUT (光學端子):

自此端子發出數碼訊號(線性 PCM,杜比數 碼*, DTS**, MPEG Multichannel) (參使用說 明書的閱第71頁。)

若要再生多聲道聲音,如杜比數碼和 DTS 時,可將與這些多聲道播放源兼容的解碼器或 擴音器連接至此端子,並將"數碼音頻輸出" 設定在正確值。(參使用說明書的閱第 46 頁)

- * 經杜比實驗室授權生產。"杜比", "Dolby" 和雙 D 標誌是杜比實驗室的商標。
- ** "DTS"和 "DTS Digital Out" 是數碼影院音響公司 之商標。

- (라인 출력) /2nd AUDIO OUT(두번째 오 디오 출력):
- 2-채널 신호가 출력됩니다.

암호화된 다중 채널 디스크를 재생할 때는 다중 채널 신호가 다운믹스됩니다.

(AUDIO—ANALOG DOWN MIX: 46 페이지 의 설명 참조)

- DIGITAL OUT 을 통해(광학): 디지털 신호(선형 PCM, 돌비 디지털*, DTS** MPEG Multichannel)가 이 터미널을 통해 출력됩니다. (자세한 사항은 71 페이 지의 설명 참조.)
- 돌비 디지털, DTS 등과 같은 다중 채널 사운 드를 재생하려면 이러한 다중 채널 소스와 호 환되는 디코더나 앰프를 이 터미널에 연결하 고 "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT(디지털 오디오 출력)"을 올바른 값으로 설정하십시오. (46 페이지의 설명 참조)
- Dolby Laboratories의 사용 승인을 받아 제조됨. "Dolby" 이중 D 기호는 Dolby Laboratories의 상표 입니다
- "DTS"와 "DTS Digital Out" 은 Digital Theater Systems, Inc.의 상표입니다.

AUDIO OUT):

สัญญาณแบบ 2 แชนแนลจะถูกส่งออกมา เมื่อเล่นแผ่นที่ใส่รหัส multi-channel สัญญาณ multichannel จะผสมเข้ามา (AUDIO-ANALOG DOWN MIX: โปรดดูหน้า 46)

• ผ่านขั้วต่อ DIGITAL OUT (optical):

สัญญาณดิจิตอล (Linear PCM Dolby Digital* DTS** MPEG multi-channel) จะถูกส่ง ออกมาผ่า นทางขั้วนี้ (ดูรายละเอียดเพิ่มเติมในหน้า 71)

วิธีสร้างเสียงแบบ multi-channel ขึ้นมาใหม่ เช่น Dolby Digital และ DTS ให้ต่อแอมพลิไฟเออร์หรือเครื่องถอดรหัส (decoder) ที่สามารถใช้กับแหล่งกำเนิดเสียงแบบ multichannel ได้เข้าทางขั้วนี้ แล้วตั้ง "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" ให้มีก่าถูกต้อง (โปรดดูหน้า 46)

* ผลิตภายใต้ใบอนุญาตจาก Dolby Laboratories สัญญูลักษณ[์] "Dolby" และตัวอักษร D สองตัวเป็นเครื่อง หมายการค้าของ Dolby Laboratories

** "DTS" และ "DTS Digital Out" เป็นเครื่อง หมายการค้าของ Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

A Typical Connections / 典型的接線方法 / 일반적인 연결 / การเชื่อมต่อแบบปกต

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully not to fail in connecting this unit. Incorrect connection may cause a serious damage to this unit.

The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- **1** Connect the colored leads of the power cord to the car battery, speakers and automatic antenna (if any) in the following sequence.
 - 1 Black: ground
 - (2) Yellow: to car battery (constant 12 V)
 - 3 Red: to an accessory terminal
 - (4) Blue: to automatic antenna if any (250 mA max.)
 - (5) Blue with white stripe: to remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.)
 - Light green: To parking brake, metallic 6 body or chassis of the car
 - $\overline{\mathcal{O}}$ Orange with white stripe: to car light control switch
 - Brown: To cellular phone system (For (8) details, refer to the instructions of the celluar phone.)
 - (9) Others: to speakers
- **2** Connect the antenna cord.

สีขาวแถบดำ

3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Before connecting the CD changer, make sure that the unit is turned off.

接線前:仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線 會導致本機嚴重損壞 電力線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能 有所

不同

- 1 按下述順序將配線東各個不同色標的導線接頭 分別接至電池、揚聲器和自動電源升降天線 (如有裝設):
 - ① 黑色:接地
- ② 黃色:接至車裝電池(恆定 12V)
- ③ 紅色:接至附屬端子
- ④ 藍色:接至自動升降天線,若有裝設(最大 250 mA)
- (5) 藍色帶有白色條紋:和其他裝置上的遙控線連
- (6)
- (7)
- (8)
- **3** 最後,把配線束的插頭插在本機上。

연결하기 전에: 차량 배선을 주의해서 점검하 십시오. 잘못 연결하면 장치가 심하게 손상될 수 있습니다.

전원 코드의 도선과 자동차 본체에 부착된 커 넥터의 도선 색상이 서로 다를 수 있습니다.

- 1 색으로 구분된 전원 코드의 도선을 다음과 같은 순서로 자동차 배터리, 스피커 및 자동 안테나(장착된 경우)에 연결합니다.
 - ① 검정색: 접지용
 - ② 노란색: 자동차 배터리에 연결 (항상 12 V)
 - 빨간색: 액세서리 단자에 연결 (3)
 - ④ 파란색: 자동 안테나가 있는 경우 여기
 - 에 연결됨 (최대 250 mA) ⑤ 흰색 줄무늬가 있는 파란색 도선: 외부
 - 기기의 원격도선에 연결됨(최대 200 mA) 연한 녹색: 주차 브레이크, 자동차의 금 (6)
 - 속 본체 또는 섀시에 연결 ⑦ 흰색 줄무늬가 있는 오랜지색: 자동차
 - 조명 제어 스위치에 연결
 - ⑧ 갈색: 휴대폰에 연결(자세한 내용은 휴 대폰 설명서 참조)

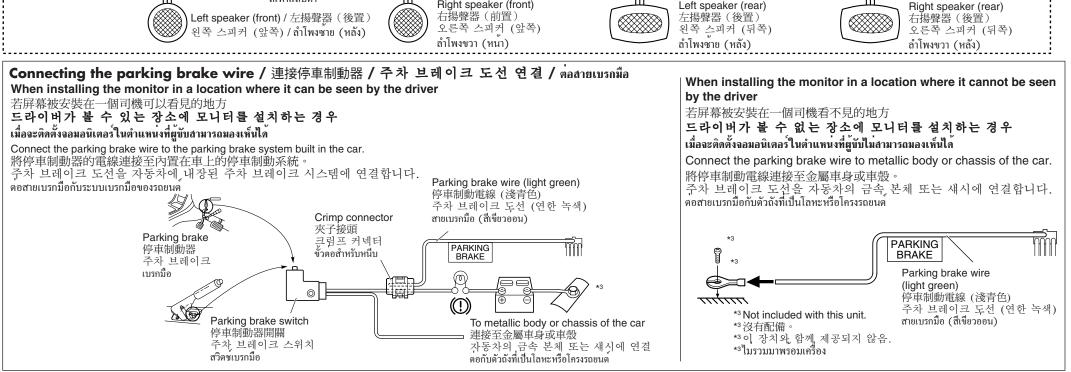
Left speaker (rear)

- ⑨ 기타: 스피커에 연결
- 2 안테나 코드에 연결합니다.
- **3** 마지막으로 배선을 장치에 연결합니다.

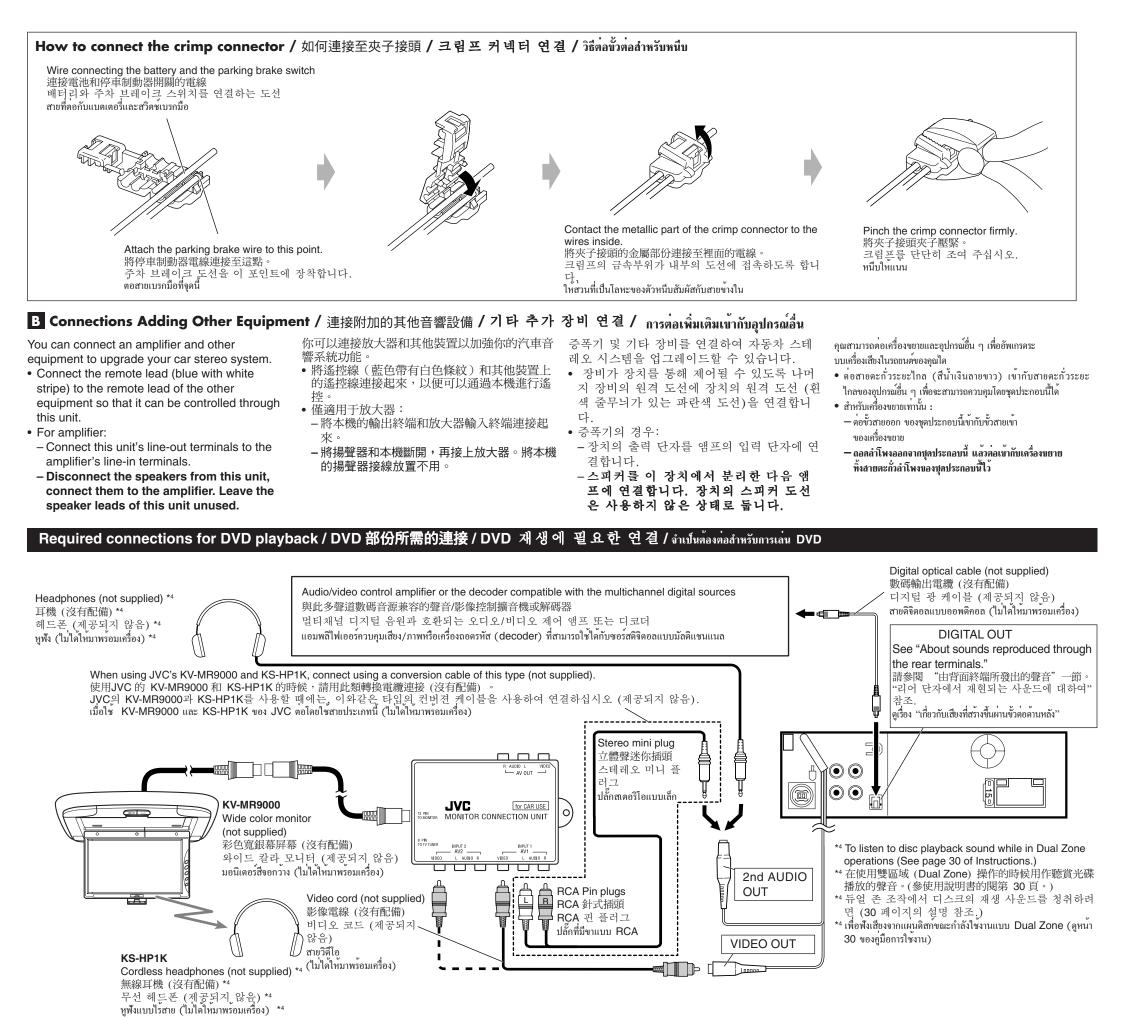
กอุตทำกาศเชตอมตอ: ตุตวจ อุตกาศเดิศ ายไฟใตุตุตุอย่างตะมั ดตะวัอย่าให้ผิดพตาดใตกาฅเชต่อมต่อชุดปตะกอตชุดคื กาตเชต่อมต่อผิดพุตาดอาจทำให้เกิดความเยหายต้ายแตงกัตชุดปตะ กอุศศี้ได้ าุตุตะกั่วของ ายไฟ แตะของอุปกุตุต์ต่อเชต่อมจากตัวค งตตอาจมี ที่ไม่เหมตอตกัด

- 1 ต่อสายต่อสีของสายไฟเข้ากับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ สำโพง และ เสาอากาศพาว เวอร์อัตโนมัติ (ถ้ามี) ตามลำดับต่อไปนี้
 - (1) สีดำ: สายดิน
 - สีเหลือง: ต่อกับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ (12 โวลท์คงที่)
 - (3) สีแดง: ต่อกับขั้วส่วนประกอบ
 - ④ สีฟ้า: เสาอากาศไฟฟ้าอัตโนมัติ หากมี (ขนาดสูงสุด 250 mA)
 - (5) สายสีฟ้าที่มีแถบขาว : ต่อกับสายตะกั่วระยะ ใกลของอุปกรณ์อื่น (ขนาดสูงสุด 200 mA)
 - 6 สีเขียวอ่อน: ต่อกับเบรกมือ ตัวถังที่เป็นโลหะ หรือโครงรถยนต์
 - ⑦ สีสมแถบขาว: ต่อกับสวิตซ์ควบคุมไฟของรถยนตร์
 - 8 สีน้ำตาล: ต่อกับโทรศัพท์เคลื่อนที่ (อ่านรายละ เอียดได้จากคู่มือที่มาพร้อมกับโทรศัพท์เคลื่อนที่)
 - (9) สีอื่น ๆ : ต่อกับลำโพง
- 2 เชื่อมต่อกับสายอากาศ
- 3 สุดท้าย ต่อส่วนควบคุมการเดินสายไฟเข้ากับชุดประกอบชุดนี้
- 連接 CD 轉換器之前,應先將本機關閉 We recommend you to connect the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer. You can also connect other CH-X series CD changers 교환기를 연결하기 전에 장치 전원을 껐는지 확인하십시오. (except CH-X99 and CH-X100). You cannot use the KD-MK series CD changers with this unit. ก่อนจะเชื่อมต่อเครื่องเล่นซีดี กรุณาตรวจสอบให้แน่ใจว่าเครื่องเล่นซีดีนั้นปีดอย You can also use an external component such as a portable MD player by connecting the Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not $\sim Q$ Antenna terminal supplied). (See diagram **B**.) To antenna 天線端子 我們建議您連接 JVC MP3 兼容的 CD 轉換器。您也可連接其它 CH-X 系列的 CD 轉換器 (CH-X99 和 CH-X100 除外)。 接至天線 안테나 단자 • 本機無法讓您與 KD-MK 系列的 CD 轉換器共同使用 안테나에 ขัวสายอากาศ 您可以通過連接線輸入適配器 KS-U57(未提供)來使用外接部件,如手提式 MD 播放機等。(參閱圖表 B) 연결됨 Rear ground terminal ต่อกับสายอา กาศ JVC MP3 호환 CD 체인저를 연결할 것을 권장합니다. CH-X99 및 CH-X100을 제외한 다른 CH-X 시리즈 CD 체인저도 연결할 本機後背接地端子 수도 있습니다. JVC CD changer jack 뒤쪽 접지 단자 JVC CD changer • KD-MK 시리즈 CD 체인저는 이 장치에서 사용할 수 없습니다 JVC CD轉換器 JVC CD轉換器插座 **จุดเชื่อมต่อสายุดินด**้านหลัง 라인 어댑터 KS-U57(공급되지 않음)을 연결하여 MD 플레이어와 같은 외부 구성요소를 사용할 수 있습니다. (그림 참조 🖪.) JVC CD 체인저 잭 JVC CD 체인저 단자 ขอแนะนำให้ดอชีดีเขนเจอร์ที่สามารถทำงานร่วมกับ JVC MP3 กับเครื่องเล่นของคุณ คุณสามารถด่อชีดีเชนเจอร์รุ่น CH-X อื่นๆ ได้ (ยกเว้นรุ่น CH-X99 และ CH-X100) Í ซีดีเชนเจอร์ JVC หัวเสียบของเครื่องเล่นซีดี ยี่ห้อ JVC คุณไม่สามารถใช้ซีดีเชนเจอร์รุ่น KD-MK กับเครื่องเล่นนี้ \mathbf{O} คุณสามารถใช้อุปกรณ์ภายนอกเช่นเครื่องเล่นเอ็มดีแบบพกพาได้ โดยนำมาเชื่อมต่อกับอแดปเดอร์สายสัญญาณเข้า KS-U57 (ไม่ได้ให้มาด้วย) (ดูแผนภูม 🖪 VIDEO OUT oo D (See diagram B) 3 (參閱圖表 B) *1 Not supplied with this unit./ 不包含在本機內。 Ignition switch (그림 참조 B) 點火開關 이 장치에 포함되지 않음/ ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบน 점화 스위치는 15 A fuse (ดูแผนภูม **B**) Black/黑色/ 5A保險絲 \frown วิทชจุดระเบิด To metallic body or chassis of the car 검정색/ลีดำ 接至金屬體或汽車底盤 자동차의 금속 본체 또는 섀시에 연결됨 ฟีวสขนาด 15 A 15 A 퓨즈 2nd AUDIO OUT LINE OUT (FRONT) ต่อกับโครงโลหะหรือเชสซิสของรถยนต์ (See diagram B) LINE OUT (REAR) (參閱圖表 B) To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery DIGITAL OUT Yellow*2 (그림 참조 B) (bypassing the ignition switch) (See diagram **B**) **黃色*2** 接至保險絲單元內的附屬端子,保險絲單元於車裝電池相連接 (ดูแผนภูม **B**) (參閱圖表 B) 노란색*2 (用於旁路點火開關) (그림 참조 B) สี่เหลือง*2 자동차 배터리에 연결하는 퓨즈 블록의 작동 단자에 연결됨 (접화 (ดูแผนภูม **B**) 스위치 우회) (2) ต่อกับขั้วที่มีกระแสไฟฟ้าในแผงฟิวส์ ซึ่งต่อกับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต (โดยไมต่องใช้สวิทช์จุดระเบิด) O *2: Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this \mathcal{O} Red/紅色/빨간색/สีแดง lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on. To an accessory terminal in the fuse block Fuse block *2: 本機未安裝時,進行工作狀況檢查之前,必須把這導線接上 接至保險絲單元內的附屬端子 퓨즈 블록의 액세서리 단자에 연결됨 7 3) 保險絲單元 '점則不能開啟電源。' 설치 전 장치의 작동을 점검하기 전에 이 도선을 연결해야 합니다. 그렇지 않으면 전원이 켜지지 않습니다. 퓨즈 플록 \oplus *²: 설치 Θ ตอกับขั้วสวนประกอบในแผงฟีวส แผงฟีวส To automatic antenna if any Blue /紅色/파란색/สีน้ำเงิน *2: กอนการตรวจสอบการทำงานของชุดประกอบนี้กอนที่จะติดตั้ง 接至自動升降天線,若有裝設 (4)ต้องตอสายตะกั่วนี้ก่อน มิฉะนั้นจะไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได 자동 안테나가 있는 경우 여기에 연결됨 Orange with white stripe / 橙色帶有白色條紋 Blue with white stripe / 藍色帶有白色條紋 เสาอากาศไฟฟ้าอัตโนมัติ หากมี · 흰색 줄무늬가 있는 오랜지색/ สีสมแถบขาว 흰색 줄무늬가 있는 파란색 도선 / สีน้ำเงินลายขาว To remote lead of other equipment / 和其他裝置上的遙控線連接起來 To car light control switch 接至汽車燈光控制轉換器 자동차 조명 제어 스위치에 연결 외부기기의 원격도선에 연결됨 / ตอกับสายตะกัวระยะไกลของอุปกรณอื่น Light green/淺青色/ (ILLUMINATION) To parking brake, metallic body or chassis of the car 연한 녹색/สีเขียวออน 接至停車制動器、金屬車身或車殼。 주차 브레이크, 자동차의 금속 본체 또는 새시에 연결 สวิตซ์ควบคุมไฟของรถยนตร์ (6) To cellular phone system (8(PARKING BRAKE) Brown/褐色/갈색/สีน้ำตาล 接至流動電話系統 ต่อกับเบรกมือ ตัวถังที่เป็นโลหะ หรือโครงรถยนต์ 휴대폰에 연결 ต่อกับโทรศัพท์เคลื่อนท (9) White Gray Green with black stripe Green Purple with black stripe Purple White with black stripe Gray with black stripe 綠色帶有黑色條紋 紫色帶有黑色條紋 白色 灰色 綠色 紫色 白色帶有黑色條紋 灰色帶有黑色條紋 검정색 줄무늬가 있는 흰색 회색 검정색 줄무늬가 있는 녹색 검정색 줄무늬가 있는 보 보라색 (-) (+) 검정색 줄무늬가 있는 (--) (+) (-) (+) (--) (+) 녹색 도선 라색 도선 สี่เขียว สี่เขียว สีขาว สีมวง 흰색 도선 Л 회색 도선 สีเขียวแถบดำ สี่มวงแถบดำ
- 接起來。(最大 200 mA) 淺青色:接至停車制動器、金屬車身或車殼。 橙色帶有白色條紋:接至汽車燈光控制轉換器 褐色:接至流動電話系統(詳情請參閱流動電 話手冊)
- ⑨ 其他:接至揚聲器
- 2 將天線的電線連接起來。

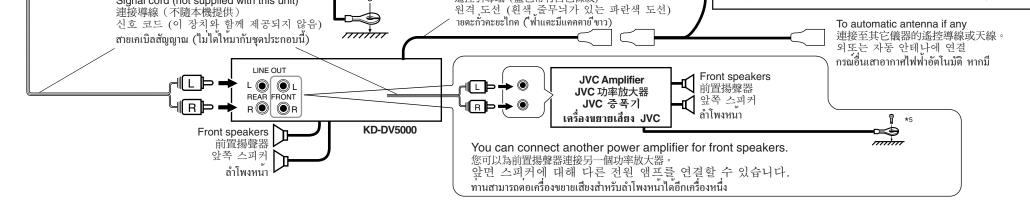
สีเทาแถบดำ



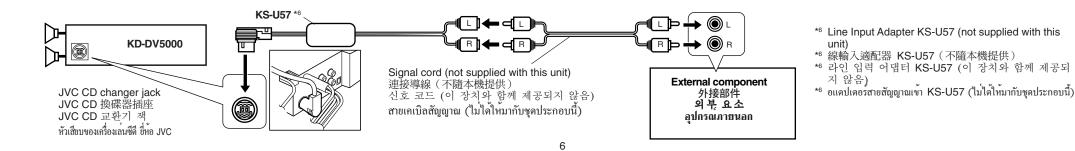
Right speaker (front)



Amplifier / 功率放大器 / 중 폭 기)/ เครื่องบยาย Remote lead Rear speakers Y-connector (not supplied with this unit) 遙控引導端 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car-後置揚聲器 Y型連接導線(不隨本機提供) 원격 도선 to the place not coated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before 뒤쪽 스피커 Y-커넥터 (이 장치와 함께 제공되지 않음) attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit. ายตะกัวฅะยะไกฅ ถำโพงหลัง ข้อต่อรูปตัว Y (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้) 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接,連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋(如果已塗上 JVC Amplifier 油漆,在連接電線前,將油漆刮去)。如果不這樣做,可能會損壞本機。 INPUT 접지선을 자동차 금속 본체 또는 섀시에 단단히 접속합니다. ? 페인트를 칠하 JVC 功率放大器 ➡) L 지 않은 부분에 연결 (페인트가 칠해져 있으면 접지선을 접속하기 전에 페인트 JVC 증폭기 를 벗기십시오). 그렇지 않으면 장치가 손상될 수 있습니다. R เครื่องขยายเสียง JVC ต่อถวดสายดินให้แน่นเข้ากับตัวถังเหล็ก หรือตัวถังรถ — ตรงส่วน ที่ไม่มีสีเกลือบ (หากมีสีเกลือบอยู่ Remote lead (Blue with white stripe) ให้ขูดสีออกก่อน ก่อนต่อถวดสายดิน) หากไม่ปฏิบัติตามกำแนะนำนี้ เครื่องอาจชำรุดหรือเสียหายได้ *5 Signal cord (not supplied with this unit) 遙控引導端 (藍色帶有白色條紋)



External component / 外接部件 / 서 브 우 퍼 / อุปกรณ์ภายนอก



JVC

A Guide to MP3

Table of playable disc types

O: Compatible

What are MP3?

ENGLISH

MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3) is one of digital audio compression standards.

• This player cannot play back MP3i and MP3 PRO formats.

About Tag of MP3

This player can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and tracks of MP3 Tag.

 This player can handle only one-byte characters. Any other characters cannot be correctly displayed.

About formats of MP3

This player cannot play back the following files:

- MP3 files without extensions such as [.MP3]. MP3 files with the extensions other than
- [.MP3] Files which do not have MP3 data.
- MP3 files are not encoded in an appropriate format.
- MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
- · Files which have the data such as WMA, WAVE, ATRAC3, MPEG 2.5, etc.

About available formats of disc

- This player cannot play back the following cases:
- CD-R/RW on which the files are written with "Packet Write" method.
- There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.).
- There are unclosed sessions on CD-R/RW (this player skips unclosed sessions).

About functions restrained during MP3 playback

- The search function works but search speed is not constant during search.
- When skip is tried at the last file in a folder, the next folder is selected.

Questions and Answers

An MP3 disc requires a long readout time ...?

- When an MP3 disc is inserted, information inside the disc (number of folders and files, and
- positions of data) is first read.
- So, in the following cases, a fairly long time may be needed before playback starts:
- If the file structure is complicated, • If the number of files is large, or
- . If the number of sessions is large (in case of multi-session discs).

There occurs sound interruption or sound skipping ...?

Sound interruption or sound skipping may occur, depending on recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.)

MP3 files are not played back in an intended order ...?

This player plays back MP3 files in the order they are organized on the disc.

 The playback order may differ from your intended order because of your writing software.

Elapsed playing time is not displayed correctly ...?

Files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate) have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual passage of time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.

		KD-DV5000
Discs containing MP3 files		MP3 playback
Mixed-CD	MP3 + CD-DA	CD-DA playback
	Other files + CD-DA	CD-DA playback
Enhanced-CD	CD-DA + MP3	CD-DA playback
File name system	ISO9660 Level1	Up to 12 characters (8.3 format)
	ISO9660 Level2	Up to 31 characters
	ISO9660 Level3	Not available
	Romeo	Up to 128 characters
	Joliet	Up to 64 characters
	Windows long file name	Up to 128 characters
Multiple session		0
80-minute discs (capacity: 700 MB)		0

• Maximun number of characters for file/folder names includes 4 extension characters—".MP3" .

Table for playable MP3 files

			Table for play	able MP3 files	O: Compatible
				KD-DV5000	
MP3	Bit-rate			8 kbps—320 kbps	
	VBR			0	
	Sampling f	requency	MPEG-1	48 kHz/ 44.1 kHz/ 32 kł	Ηz
			MPEG-2	24 kHz/ 22.05 kHz/ 16 k	Hz
	Joint stere	D		0	
	Emphasis			—	
	ID3-Tag		Ver. 1.0/ 1.1		
m3u pla	aylist			Not available	
Manua	search			 (Search speed is not con 	stant.)
Maxim	um number of	folder hie	rarchy	10	
Maximum number File		Files on e	each folder	150	
of files/folders		Folders o	n a disc	99	
		Total		14850	
Maxim	um number of	character	s on the display	64 (32 on the monitor) (includir	ng [.MP3])

Glossary

CD-DA The data of music CD Mixed-CD A CD-R/RW on which audio tracks (CD-DA data) have been added to data tracks before closing a session.

Enhanced-CD

A CD-R/RW on which data tracks have been added to audio tracks (CD-DA data) before closing a session. **Multiple session** A CD-writing method, which make it possible to

add data on a CD-R/RW after closing a session.

中文

MP3的指南

什麼是MP3?

MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3) 是數碼壓 縮基準當中的一種。

•本機無法播放MP3i及MP3 PRO的格式。

關于MP3的標記

本機能顯示MP3所含的專輯名稱、藝人名 稱、音軌。

•本機只能掌握一位元組字體。其他字體將 無法正確被顯示。

關于MP3的格式

- 本機無法播放以下所列的文件:
- •不帶有[.MP3]增設碼的MP3文件。
- •帶有除了[.MP3]以外增設碼的MP3文件。
- •不含任何MP3資料的文件
- •以不合適格式編碼的MP3文件。
- •以Layer 1/2代格式編碼的MP3文件。 •含有例如WMA, WAVE, ATRAC3, MPEG2.5等資料的文件。

問答

當插入MP3光碟時,最先被讀出是光碟內的 資訊(文件夾及文件的數量,以及資料的位

因此在下列情況下,播放開始前需要較長的

- 文件的結構複雜,
- 文件的數量龐大,或者

•段數過多(播放的是多重片段光碟時)。

因錄制條件(遺漏資料等)或環境條件(污 跡、擦痕、翹曲等)而定,有可能發生斷音 或跳音現像。

- MP3文件不能按設定的順序進行播放...? 本機是根據編制于光碟裡的順序播放MP3文

可播放的光碟種類表

O:相容

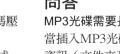
	KD-DV5000		
ć碟	播放MP3		
MP3 + CD-DA	播放 CD-DA		
其他文件 + CD-DA	播放 CD-DA		
CD-DA + MP3	播放 CD-DA		
ISO9660 一級	最多能顯示12個字符(8.3格式)		
ISO9660 二級	最多能顯示 31 個字符		
ISO9660 三級	無		
Romeo	最多能顯示 128 個字符		
Joliet	最多能顯示 64 個字符		
Windows 長文件名稱	最多能顯示 128 個字符		
	0		
	0		
	MP3 + CD-DA 其他文件 + CD-DA CD-DA + MP3 ISO9660 一級 ISO9660 三級 Romeo Joliet		

• 文件/文件夾名稱的最多能顯示字符包括4個增設碼一".MP3"。

O:相容

可播放的 MP3 文件表

KD-DV5000



置)。

讀出時間:

發生斷音或跳音現像...?

- 件。
- •播放順序可能因為您的寫入軟件而與設定

MP3光碟需要長的讀出時間...?

關于適用于光碟的格式

本機無法在下列情況下進行播放:

- CD-R/RW光碟所含的文件是以"Packet Write"(整組寫入)法寫入成的。
- 具帶不適當的錄制條件(遺漏資料等)或 環境條件(污跡、擦痕、翹曲等)。
- CD-R/RW光碟含有未鎖定片段(本機將 略過未鎖定片段)。

關于MP3進行播放時所受限制 的功能

- 搜尋功能有效但搜尋過程中的速度不恆 定。
- 當選擇跳至某文件夾裡的最後一個文件 時,被選取的會是下一個文件夾。

的順序不同。

不能正確顯示播過時間...? 以VBR (可變性位元傳輸速率) 寫入的文件 在顯示其播過時間時會有差異,而無法準確 顯示播過時間。尤其是在進行過搜尋功能後 更為明顯。

MP3 位元傳輸速率 VBR		<u>x</u>	8 kbps – 320 kbps	
			0	
	抽樣頻率	MPEG-1	48 kHz 、 44.1 kHz 、 32 kHz	
		MPEG-2	24 kHz 、 22.05 kHz 、 16 kHz	
	Joint Stereo	(聯合立體聲)	0	
	Emphasis ()	加重)	—	
	ID3- 標記		1.0、1.1版本	
m3u pl	aylist		無	
手動搜	尋		O(搜尋速度不恆定)	
最多個	文件夾級別		10	
最多個	文件/文件夾	每個文件夾的文件	150	
光碟的文件夾 總共		光碟的文件夾	99	
		總共	14850	
最多個	能顯示字符		64 (32 于熒光屏上) (包括[.MP3])	
用語說	說明			
CD-DA			Enhanced-CD	
音樂CDI	的資料。		一張在未鎖定某片段前將資料軌加進音軌	
Mixed-CD			(CD-DA資料)的CD-R/RW光碟。	
一張在未鎖定某片段前將音軌(CD-DA資料)			多重片段光碟	
	h軌的CD-R/RV		一種CD的寫入方法,能在鎖定某片段後仍	
加些具作				
			然可讓CD-R/RW光碟添加資料。	

MP3에 대한 안내

MP3는 무엇인가요?

MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3)은 디지털 오디 오 압축 표준의 하나입니다 • 이 재생기는 MP3i와 MP3 PRO 포맷을 재생 할 수 없습니다.

MP3의 태그에 대해서

이 플레이어는 앨범의 이름, 가수 (연주자), 그리 고 트랙에 대한 내용이 실려있는 MP3 태그를 표시할 수 있습니다.

• 이 플레이어는 1바이트 문자까지만 취급할 수 있습니다. 그 이외의 문자는 제대로 표시할 수 없습니다.

MP3의 포맷에 대해서

이 플레이어는 다음과 같은 파일의 경우에는 재 생할 수 없습니다:

- •[.MP3]와 같은 확장명이 없는 MP3 파일의 경
- •[.MP3]와 같은 확장명이 아닌 다른 확장명으 로 된 MP3 파일의 경우. • MP3 데이타가 없는 파일의 경우. • 적절한 포맷으로 인코드되어 있지 않은 MP3
- 파일의 경우 • Layer 1또는 Layer 2로 인코드된 MP3파일
- 의 경우. • WMA, WAVE, ATRAC3, MPEG 2.5 등과 같은 데이타를 포함한 파일들의 경우.

사용가능한 디스크 포맷에 관하 Q

이 플레이어는 다음의 경우 재생을 할 수 없습니 다:

- CD-R/RW에 기록할 때 "Packet Write" (패킷 쓰기) 방법을 사용한 경우
- 녹음상태 (데이터 누락 등)나 미디어 상태 (얼 룩, 긁힘, 휨 등)가 좋지 않을경우. • CD-R/RW 에 "세션닫기"가 되어있지 않은
- 경우 (이 플레이어는 닫혀지지 않은 세션은 건 너뜁니다).

MP3 재생시 방지된 기능에 대 해서

- 검색기능이 작동하지만, 검색하는동안 검색 속 도가 일정하지 않습니다.
- 폴도의 마지막 파일에서 건너뛰기를 시도하면. 그 바로 다음 폴더가 선택됩니다.

질문및 대답

MP3 디스크는 판독시간이 더 오래걸립니 까…?

MP3 디스크를 넣으면 디스크에 들어 있는 정보 (폴더와 파일수, 데이터의 위치) 가 먼저 판독됩 니다

따라서, 다음의 경우 재생이 시작되기 전에 긴 시간이 소요될 수 있습니다:

- 파일구조가 복잡한 경우, • 파일의 수가 많거나 혹은
- 세션수가 많은 경우 (예를 들어 멀티 세션 디스 크의 경우)

사운드가 중단되거나 건너뛰는 현상이 발 생하면…?

녹음상태 (데이터 누락 등)나 미디어 상태 (얼룩 긁힘, 휨 등)에 따라서 사운드가 중단되거나 건 너뛰는 현상이 발생할 수 있습니다.

- MP3 파일이 원하는 순서대로 재생되지 않 으면…?
- 이 플레이어는 MP3 파일들을 디스크에 수록된 순서대로 재생합니다.
- 당신이 기록하기 위해서 사용하는 소프트웨어 에 따라서 실제재생순서가 원하는 순서와 다를

수 있습니다 실제 재생시간이 정확하게 표시되지 않을 때…?

에 (가변비트전송률)로 기록된 파일에서는 경 과시간이 실제 재생시간과 다를 수 있으며, 실제 경과시간을 표시하지 않습니다. 특히, 검색기능 을 수행한 다음에는 이러한 차이가 두드러지게 나타납니다.

재생가능한 디스크 방식표

O: (호환가능)

		KD-DV5000
MP3 파일을 모두	포함하는 디스크	MP3 재생
Mixed-CD	MP3 + CD-DA	CD-DA 재생
	다른종류의 파일 + CD-DA	CD-DA 재생
Enhanced-CD	CD-DA + MP3	CD-DA 재생
파일 이름 시스템	ISO9660 레벨 1	최대 12 문자까지 (8.3 포맷)
	ISO9660 레벨 2	최대 31문자까지
	ISO9660 레벨 3	사용불가
	Romeo	최대 128단어까지
	Joliet	최대 64단어까지
	Windows 긴 파일이름	최대 128단어까지
멀티 세션 (다중 시	예션)	0
80분 용량 디스크		0
(용량 : 700 MB)		J

• 파일/폴더 이름으로 기록가능한 최대숫자는 ".MP3"와 같은 4개의 확장문자를 포함 한것을 말합니다.

재생가능한MP3 파일표 O:(호환가능)

			KD-DV5000	
MP3	비트	전송률		8 kbps-320 kbps
	VBF	2		0
	샘플	링 주파수	MPEG-1	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
			MPEG-2	24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
	(조인		(두채널 동시 인코딩))	Ο
	Emp	ohasis (엠퍼/	시스)	—
	ID3	태그		버전 1.0, 1.1
m3u p	laylis	st		사용불가
수동 검	색			○(검색속도가 일정하지 않음)
		<u> '</u> 폴더의 계층	구조	10
최대 파	·일/	일/ 각각의 폴더에 대한 파일수		150
폴더수		각 디스크에 대한 폴더수		99
	합계			14850
표시가능	표시가능한 최대문자수			64(화면상으로는 32) ([.MP3]포함)

용어설명

CD-DA 음악CD 데이터 Mixed-CD 세션을 닫기전에 오디오 트랙 (CD-DA)이 데이 터 트랙에 추가된 CD-R/RW

Enhanced-CD

세션을 닫기전 데이터 트랙이 오디오 트랙 (CD-DA)에 추가된 CD-R/RW 멀티 세션 CD를 기록하는 방법, 이 방법으로 기록된 경우 세션을 닫은 후CD-R/RW 에 데이터를 더 추가 할 수 없음.

ภาษาไทย

คำแนะนำการใช้ MP3

MP3 คืออะไร?

MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3) คือ 1 ในมาตรฐานการบีบอัด แบบดิจิตอล

 เครื่องเล่นนี้ไม่สามารถเล่นไฟล์รูปแบบ MP3i ແລະ MP3 PRO

เกี่ยวกับป้ายแสดงข้อมูลของ MP3

- เครื่องเล่นนี้สามารถแสดงชื่อของอัลบัม, ชื่อศิลปิน (ผู้แสดง), และป้ายแสดงแทร็คของ MP3
- เครื่องเล่นนี้สามารถรองรับตัวอักษรประเภท 1-ใบต์ เท่านั้น ตัวอักษรอื่นๆ ไม่สามารถแสดงได้อย่างถูกต้อง

เกี่ยวกับรูปแบบข้อมูล MP3

- เครื่องเล่นนี้ไม่สามารถเล่นไฟล์ดังต่อไปนี้ได้
- ไฟล์ MP3 ที่ไม่มี [.MP3]
- ไฟล์ MP3 ที่ไม่ใช่นามสกุล [.MP3]
- ไฟล์ที่ไม่มีข้อมูล MP3
- ไฟล์ MP3 ที่ไม่ได้ถอดรหัสในรูปแบบที่เหมาะสม
- ไฟล์ MP3 ที่เข้ารหัสด้วย Layer 1/2 • ไฟล์ที่ไม่มีข้อมูลต่อไปนี้ WMA, WAVE, ATRAC3, MPEG 2.5 และอื่นๆ

เกี่ยวกับรปแบบข้อมลของดิสก์

ค่ำถามและค่ำตอบ

ดิสก์ MP3 ใช้เวลาในการอ่านเท่าใด...?

เมื่อใส่ดิสก์ MP3 เข้าไป เริ่มแรกหัวอ่านจะอ่านข้อมูลภายในแผ่น ก่อน (จำนวนโฟล์ดเดอร์ และไฟล์ รวมทั้งตำแหน่งของข้อมูล) ดังนั้น เครื่องเล่นจะใช้เวลาในการเริ่มต้นเล่นนานพอควร ดั้งเช่น กรณีดังต่อไปนี้

- โครงสร้างของไฟล์ซับซ้อน
- จำนวนไฟล์มาก หรือ
- จำนวนการแบ่งของแผ่นมาก (ในกรณีที่เป็นดิสก์แบบแบ่ง แผ่นหลายส่วน)

เสียงที่เล่นจากเครื่องเล่นมีการสะดุด และถูกขัดจังหวะ...? เสียงสะดุด หรือถูกขัดจังหวะอาจเกิดขึ้นได้ขึ้นอยู่กับสภาวะตอน ที่บันทึก (ข้อมูลขาดหายไป และอื่นๆ) หรือสถานะของแผ่น (สกปรก, เป็นรอยขีดข่วน, บิดงอ และอื่นๆ)

- ไฟล์ MP3 ถูกเล่นไม่เป็นไปตามลำดับ...?
- เครื่องเล่นนี้จะเล่นไฟล์ MP3 ตามระดับขั้นที่ได้มีการจัดเรียงตาม แผ่น
- ลำดับการเล่นของไฟล์อาจแตกต่างจากลำดับที่ตั้งไว้ เนื่องจากซอฟท์แวร์ที่ใช้เขียนข้อมูล
- ระยะเวลาการเล่นที่แสดงบนหน้าจือไม่ถกต้อง...?

ไฟล์ที่ถูกบันทึกใน VBR (variable bit rate) ไม่เข้ากันกับการ แสดงระยะเวลาการเล่นบนหน้าจอ และไม่สามารถแสดงเวลาที่ใช้ เล่นที่แท้จริงได้ จะสังเกตเห็นความแตกต่างนี้ได้หัดเจน หลังจาก

ตารางแสดงชนิดของดิสก์ที่สามารถเล่นได้กับเครื่องเล่น O: สามารถเล่นได้

		KD-DV5000
แผ่นดิสก์ที่มีทั้งไฟล์ MP3		เล่น MP3 ได้
Mixed-CD	MP3 + CD-DA	เล่น CD-DA ได้
	ไฟล์อื่นๆ + CD-DA	เล่น CD-DA ได้
Enhanced-CD	CD-DA + MP3	เล่น CD-DA ได้
ระบบชื่อไฟล์	ISO9660 Level1	ได้ถึง 12 ตัวอักษร (รูปแบบ 8.3)
	ISO9660 Level2	ได้ถึง 31 ตัวอักษร
	ISO9660 Level3	ไม่สามารถเล่นได้
	Romeo	ได้ถึง 128 ตัวอักษร
	Joliet	ได้ถึง 64 ตัวอักษร
	ชื่อเต็มของไฟล์ Windows	ได้ถึง 128 ตัวอักษร
Multiple session		0
ดิสก์ความยาว 80 นาที (บรรจุได้: 700 MB)		0

จำนวนตัวอักษรสูงสุดสำหรับชื่อไฟล์/โฟล์ดเดอร์ คือ 4 ตัวอักษรเพิ่มเติม".MP3"

- เครื่องเล่นนี้ ไม่สามารถเล่นได้ตามปกติในกรณีดังต่อไปนี้ • CD-R/RW ที่มีไฟล์ที่ถูกเขียนด้วยวิธีการ
- "Packet Write" (เขียนแบบแพ็ค)
- มีสภาวะการบันทึกไม่เหมาะสม (ข้อมูลขาดหายไป และอื่น ๆ หรือสภาวะของแผ่นไม่เหมาะสม (สกปรก, เป็นรอยขีดข่วน, บิดงอ และอื่นๆ))
- มีส่วนของแผ่นที่ไม่ได้ทำการปิดในแผ่น CD-R/RW (เครื่องเล่นนี้จะข้ามส่วนที่ไม่ได้ทำการปิดนั้นไป)

้เกี่ยวกับข้อจำกัดของฟังก์ชันระหว่างการเล่นไฟล์

MP3

- ระหว่างการทำงานของฟังก์ชันการค้นหา การค้นหาจะมีอัตรา ค้นหาไม่คงที่
- เมื่อมีการอ่านข้ามไฟล์สุดท้ายในโฟล์ดเดอร์ เครื่องจะเลือก อ่านโฟล์ดเดอร์ถัดไป

การทำงานของฟังก์ชันการค้นหา

				KD-DV 5000
MP3	ระดับของบิต			8 kbps — 320 kbps
	VBR	VBR		0
	ความถี่ในการสุ่ม ข้อมูล	MPEG-1	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	
		MPEG-2	24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz	
Joint stereo (เชื่อมต่อสเตอริโอ)		เสเตอริโอ)	0	
Emphasis (ความแรง))	
	ID3-Tag (การติดป้าย ID3)			Ver. 1.0, 1.1
m3u playlist				ไม่สามารถเล่นได้
ค้นหาด้วยตัวเอง				O (อัตราการค้นหาไม่สม่ำเสมอ)
จำนวนระดับขั้นของโฟล์คเดอร์สูงสุด				10
จำนวนโฟล์ดเดอร์		จำนวนไฟล์ในแต่ละโฟล์ดเดอร์		150
/ไฟล์สูงสุด	ด	จำนวนโฟล์ดเดอร์ในดิสก์		99
		รวมทั้งหมด		14850
จำนวนตัวอักษรสูงสุดที่สามารถแสดงบนหน้าจอได้			งบนหน้าจอได้	64 (32 บนมอนิเตอร์)(รวมทั้ง[.MP3])

ค่ำอธิบาย

CD-DA

ข้อมูลของ CD เพลง

Mixed-CD

CD-R/RW ที่มีแทร็คออดิโอ (ข้อมูล CD-DA) และถูกเขียนแ ทรึคข้อมูลเพิ่มเติมก่อนทำการปิดแผ่่น

Enhanced-CD

CD-R/RW ที่มีแทร็คข้อมูล (ข้อมูล CD-DA) และถูกเขียน แทร็คออดิโอเพิ่มเติมก่อนท่ำการปิดแผ่น

Multiple session

วิธีการเขียน CD แบบหนึ่ง ที่ทำให้ CD-R/RW สามารถเขียน ข้อมลเพิ่มเติมได้หลังทำการปิดแผ่น

ENGLISH

Note on Video CD (VCD) playback—Forward/Reverse Search:

While searching for a particular scene on a VCD, the pictures may stop changing on the monitor. If this happens, resume normal playback by pressing \blacktriangleright on the remote controller or \blacktriangle (up) on the control panel, then restart searching.

中文

播放視頻CD (VCD)時看意 - 前進 / 倒退搜索: 當您搜索VCD裡的某一幕的時候,屏幕上的圖像可能會停止變換。 若發生這種情形,請按遙控器上的 ▶ 鍵或控制面板上的 ▲ (向上) 鍵以回復正常播放,然後再重新 搜索。

한국어

비디오 CD(VCD) 재생 - 앞으로/뒤로 검색에 대하여:

VCD 에서 특정장면을 검색하는 동안에, 모니터의 이미지가 정지되어 나타날 수 있습니다. 이 경우, 리모콘의 ▶ 또는 제어판의 ▲(위)을 눌러 정상 재생으로 돌아갔다가, 다시 검색을 실행하 여 주십시오.

ไทย

หมายเหตุ การเล่นวิดีโอขีดี (วีซีดี) ะ การค้นหาแบบเดินหน้า/ถอยหลัง : ขณะเครื่องก้นหาภาพช่วงใดช่วงหนึ่งบนวีดีซี ภาพบนหน้าจออาจหยุดเปลี่ยนภาพได้ ถ้าเกิดเหตุการณ์เช่นนี้ ให้กลับไปเริ่มเล่นตามปกติ โดยกด ► บนรีโมทกอนโทรล หรือ ▲ (ขึ้น) บนแผงกวบคุม แล้วเริ่มก้นหาภาพอีกครั้ง